



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

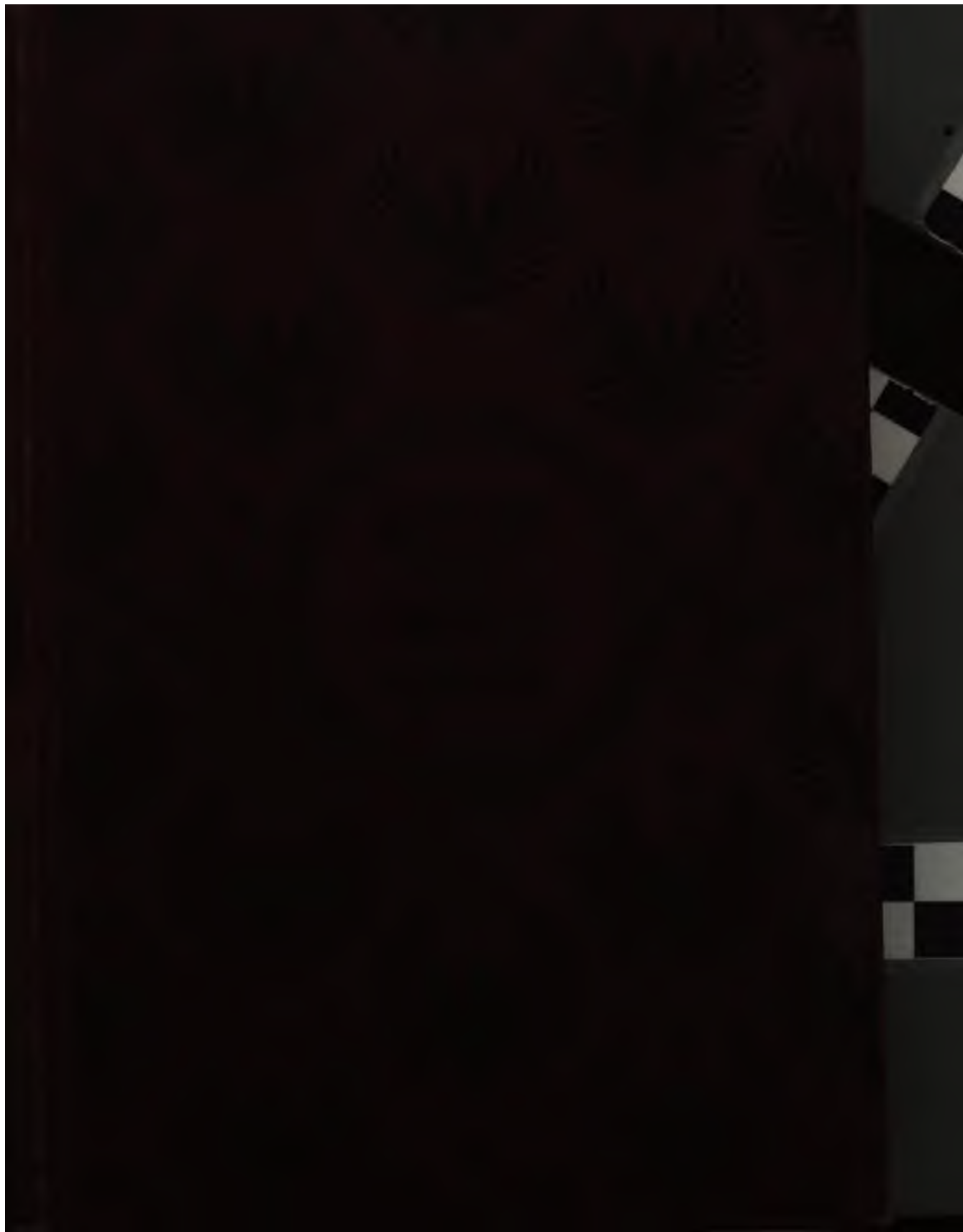
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

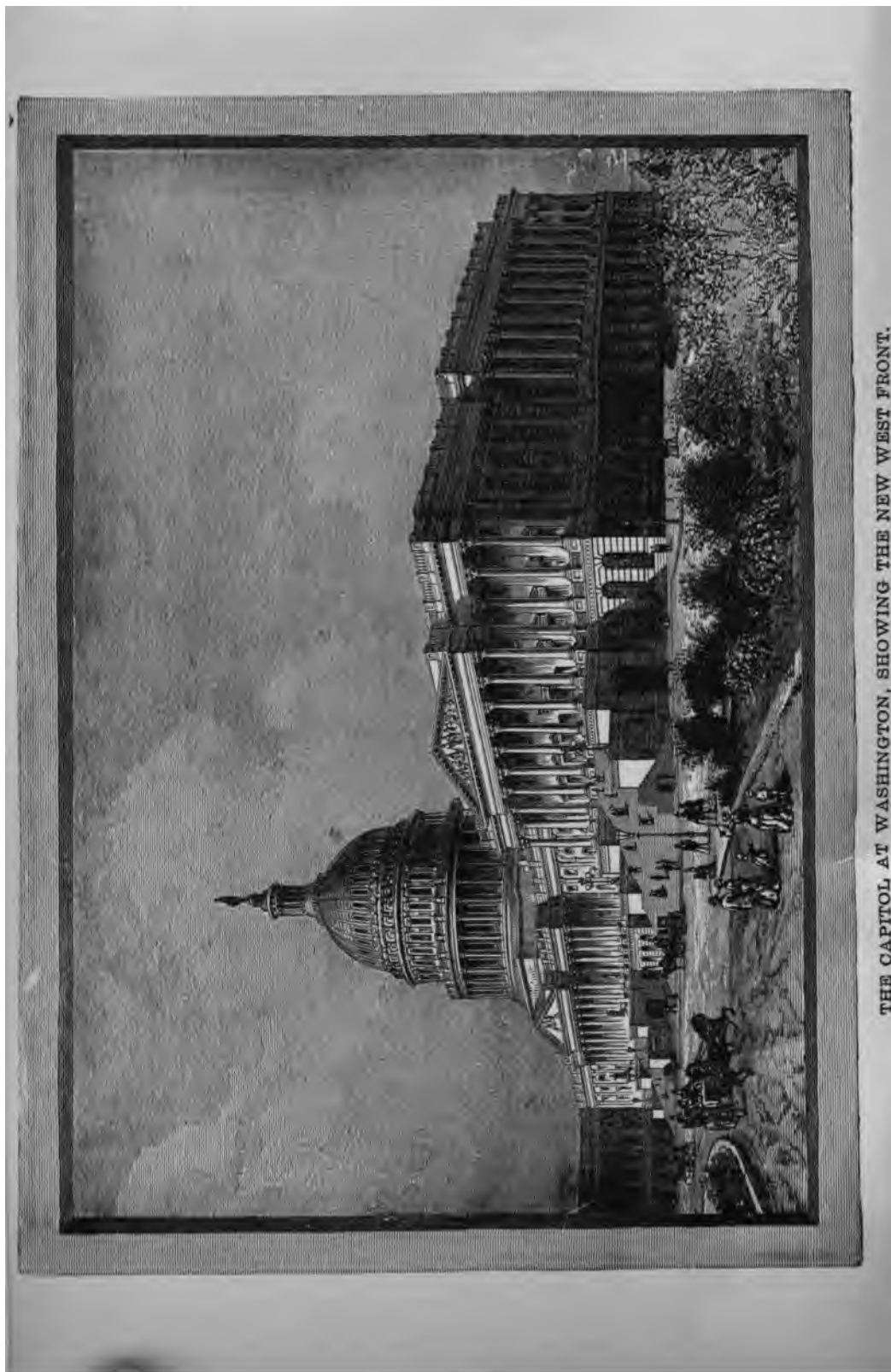


Chiyo Ann Kato
286 Florence St.
Sunnyvale, California

This One



BXZA-249-BR6A



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON, SHOWING THE NEW WEST FRONT.

HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

FROM ABORIGINAL TIMES TO THE PRESENT DAY

EMBRACING AN ACCOUNT OF THE ABORIGINES; THE NORSEMEN IN THE NEW WORLD;
THE DISCOVERIES BY THE SPANIARDS, ENGLISH AND FRENCH; THE PLANTING OF SETTLEMENTS;
THE GROWTH OF THE COLONIES; THE STRUGGLE FOR LIBERTY IN THE REVOLUTION; THE ESTABLISHMENT
OF THE UNION; THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NATION; THE CIVIL WAR; THE CENTENNIAL
OF INDEPENDENCE; AND THE RECENT ANNALS OF THE REPUBLIC

IN FOUR VOLUMES

VOLUME I

By JOHN CLARK RIDPATH, LL.D.

*Professor of History at De Pauw University, Greencastle, Ind.; Author of the
"Cyclopædia of Universal History," "History of the World," Etc.*

BOSTON
CHARLES E. BROWN & CO.

COPYRIGHT, 1876,
BY JOHN T. JONES.

COPYRIGHT, 1886,
BY PHILLIPS AND HUNT.

COPYRIGHT, 1889, 1891,
BY HUNT AND EATON.

COPYRIGHT, 1891, 1892, 1894,
BY THE UNITED STATES HISTORY CO.

PRESSWORK BY
S. J. PARKHILL & Co., BOSTON, U. S. A.

PREFACE.

DEAR PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES:—

By this, my Preface, I offer to you a New History of your country — and mine. The work is presented in the form of an abridged narrative. My reasons for such a venture are brief, but chief among them is the fact that, to every American citizen some knowledge of the history of his country is indispensable, and the attainment of that knowledge ought to be made easy and delightful.

This history is intended for the average American ; for the man of business who has neither time nor disposition to plod through ten or twenty volumes of elaborate historical dissertation ; for the practical man of the shop, the counter, and the plough. The work is dedicated to the household and the library of the working man. It is inscribed to the father, the mother, the son, and the daughter of the American family. If father, mother, son, and daughter shall love their country better — if they shall understand more clearly and appreciate more fully the founding, progress, and growth of liberty in the New World — the author will be abundantly repaid.

In the preparation of the work the following objects have been kept in view :

I. To give an accurate and spirited Narrative of the principal events in our National history from the aboriginal times to the present day.

II. To discuss the Philosophy of that history as fully as possible within the narrow limits of the work.

III. To avoid all Partiality, Partisanship, and Prejudice, as things dangerous, baneful, and wicked.

IV. To preserve a clear and systematic Arrangement of the several subjects, giving to every fact, whether of peace or war, its true place and importance in the narrative.

V. To secure a Style and Method in the book itself which shall be in keeping with the spirit and refinement of the times.

Whether these important ends have been attained, dear People, it is not my province but yours to decide. I have labored earnestly to reach the ideal of such a work, and if success has not rewarded the effort, the failure has been in the execution rather than in the plan and purpose.

I surrender the history thus undertaken and completed, to You — for whom it was intended. With diffidence I ask a considerate judgment and just recognition of whatever worth the work may be found to possess.

J. C. R.

PREFACE TO IMPERIAL EDITION.

In the present edition of the History of the United States the author has availed himself of the occasion to revise and enlarge the work, bringing the narrative down to the present day. He has expanded those parts which cover the last two decades of our history, so as to give to current events as much space as the limitations of the work will permit. It is hoped that the reader may thus find not only an adequate account of the earlier epochs, but also a satisfactory narration of the recent—even the most recent—parts of our national development.

Little apology should be made for the publication of a work of this kind. Whatever may be its defects, the essential merits of the subject must prove to be not only the explanation, but in some measure the justification of the enterprise. The history of our country is a theme which can never be exhausted by repetition. It increases in interest with its diffusion; familiarity, in this case at least, instead of breeding contempt, adds rather an increasing charm to the story.

I have attempted in this work to give within moderate limits a succinct account of the principal events in the History of the United States. Beginning with the earliest voyages and discoveries, I have spoken of the first foothold and plantings of civilization on our continent. I have attempted to narrate, not in minute details but in general outline of sufficient amplitude, the adventures and tentative movements by which the better parts of the New World were reclaimed and brought at length under the dominion of the English-speaking race. The same method has been pursued in the so-called Colonial period of our history, and through the epoch of the intercolonial wars.

Two reasons may be assigned for dwelling with tolerable fullness upon this part of our career as a people. The first is the inherent interest which the early ages of our history possess; and the second is the dependency of our larger development upon the Colonial planting. He who dwells with care on the matters presented in our age of discovery can hardly fail to find in the same such interest as the drama furnishes to the eager and curious mind. He who studies with attention the facts present in our Colonial epoch will discover in the same the fundamental conditions of the larger national life which has arisen therefrom.

The formative period of that life includes the great event by which our independence of the Mother Country was achieved, namely, the War of the Revolution. In this struggle of our heroic age the movements of the new American societies towards unity, freedom and greatness can be easily discerned. The virtues of

PREFACE TO IMPERIAL EDITION.

that important period—its patriotism, singleness of purpose, high motives of conduct and devotion to principle—must plainly appear to every thoughtful reader. The example of the patriot fathers may well furnish to their descendants the motives and inspiration requisite to right citizenship in the greatest of republics.

In history not everything is accomplished at one stroke. Our War of Independence did not suffice for the nationality of the United States. That came afterwards, by trial stages, by attraction and repulsion, by the growth of many things and the decay of some, and finally by the ordeal of the greatest war of modern history.

It was needed that a considerable period should elapse between the founding and the completion of our national structure. Room must be afforded for the abatement of old antagonisms and the death of hurtful prejudices. Opportunity must be given for the birth and development of new sentiments to which our fathers were strangers. Space must be had for the spread of this strong Anglo-American race, and for the obliteration of that localism with which it had been hampered in the beginning.

Our War for the Union carries still in the memories of men the bruises of the battlefield. That struggle made for itself a great memory in the world, and marked the limitation which the civilized life of man drew at last around some of the most grievous abuses of ancient times. It was in this furnace that African slavery perished; out of it came new concepts of the rights of man and the blessings possible under a purified and enlarged democracy.

Nor should we fail to reflect upon the great period which has now elapsed since the close of our civil conflict. More than one-fourth of our whole national career, measured from the foundation of the Republic, lies this side of Appomattox! During this period an increment of twenty-seven millions of souls, or forty per cent. of the whole, has been added to our population. A continent has been reclaimed and organized into great States; the foundations have been laid with seeming security for the greatest nationality in the world. We have made a way for posterity, as our fathers made a way for us.

It is fitting that all this should come vividly to the recollection, and I have endeavored in the following pages to recite the story in a manner befitting the age. It has been my aim to include all the essentials of the narrative, omitting only so much as may be spared without marring the outline of the whole. I do not flatter myself that the work has been perfectly done, but may claim to have spared no effort to make this history of our country worthy of the theme and of the great public, into whose hands I cordially deliver the result of my labor.

J. C. R.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

What constitutes a period in history.—The period of the Aborigines.—The second period in the history of the United States.—Extends from the discovery of the continent to the establishment of permanent settlements.—The third period.—Reaches from the first colonies to the war of the Revolution.—The fourth period.—Embraces the Revolution and the consolidation of the government.—The fifth period is most important.—Extends from the adoption of the Constitution to the present time.—The names and dates of the several periods. 39, 40.

PART I.

ABORIGINAL AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

THE RED MEN—ORIGIN, DISTRIBUTION, CHARACTER.

The Indians.—Their name accounted for.—Differences between them and the Asiatics.—The origin of the Indian races unknown.—Theories controverted.—The question likely to remain unsolved.—Language may give us light.—The Red men Ganowanians.—Habits of that race.—Divisions of the aboriginal nations.—The Esquimaux.—Their manner of life.—The race of Algonquins.—Their distribution.—And character.—The Huron-Iroquois.—Their domain.—Nature of their confederation.—Their influence and character.—The Southern races.—Cherokees.—Mobilians.—Manners and characteristics.—The Dakotas.—Their limits.—The Comanches.—The nations beyond the Mountains.—Shoshonees.—Selish.—Klamaths.—Californians.—Aztecs and Toltecs of old.—The Indian character in general.—Sense of personal independence.—Passion for war.—Principles of war.—And of peace.—The Indian unsocial and solitary.—His family organization.—The European family.—Diagram thereof.—Indian method.—And diagram.—Aboriginal government.—Powers and limitations.—Native religion.—Beliefs of the Red men.—Their arts.—Rudeness of the same.—The Indian house.—Utensils.—Weapons.—Clothing.—Decorations.—Paint.—And writing.—The savage tongues.—Peculiarities of Indian speech.—Personal appearance of the aborigines.—Stature.—Features.—Bodily habit.—Indian amusements.—The dance.—Other sports.—Gaming.—The use of tobacco.—Strong drinks.—Indian prospects.—Reflections. 41-50

PART II. VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.

A. D. 986—1607.

CHAPTER II.

THE ICELANDERS AND NORWEGIANS IN AMERICA.

Herjulfson is driven by a storm to the American coast.—Lief Erickson discovers America.—Thorwald and Thorstein Erickson make voyages.—Thorfinn Karlsefne explores the shores of Maine and Massachusetts.—Other voyages are made by the Norsemen.—The name of Vinland.—Character of the sea-kings.—Voyages in the following centuries.—No practical results from the Icelandic discoveries.—Their authenticity.—Note. 51-54.

CHAPTER III.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES.

Spain makes the New World known to Europe.—Old ideas about the figure of the earth.—Columbus.—Sketch of his life.—The favor of Isabella.—Columbus departs on his first voyage.—Discovers San Salvador, Cuba, and Hayti.—Second voyage of Columbus.—Third.—He discovers South America.—Fourth voyage.—Columbus's misfortunes and death.—Wrong done to his memory.—Vespucci makes two voyages to South America.—Excitement in Europe on account of discoveries.—Colony planted on the Isthmus.—Balboa discovers the Pacific.—Ponce de Leon makes explorations in Florida.—Is killed in a fight with the Indians. 54-58.

CHAPTER IV.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES—CONTINUED.

Cordova discovers Yucatan.—Grijalva explores Mexico.—Cortez lands at Tabasco.—Terror pervades the country.—The natives are beaten back.—Cortez proceeds to Vera Cruz.—Montezuma sends embassies and presents.—The Spaniards march towards the capital.—And are forbidden to approach.—The Mexican tribes revolt.—Cortez reaches the city.—And enters.—His critical situation.—He seizes Montezuma.—Who acknowledges the king of Spain.—The governor of Cuba sends forces against Cortez.—He overpowers them.—Returns to the capital.—The struggle for possession of the city.—Montezuma is wounded.—And dies.—The Spaniards are victorious.—Mexico becomes a Spanish province.—Magellan sails around South America.—Crosses the Pacific.—Is killed at the Philippines.—His crew reach the East Indies.—Double the Cape of Good Hope.—Return to Europe.—De Narvaez is appointed governor of Florida.—Explores the country around the Gulf.—The company embark in boats, and are wrecked.—Four men reach San Miguel.—De Soto sets out on an expedition to explore and conquer Florida.—Arrives at Tampa Bay.—Marches into the interior.—Spends the winter on Flint River.—The company march into South Carolina.—Cross into Georgia.—Capture Manville.—Spend the next winter on the Yazoo.—Discover the Mississippi.—Explore Arkansas and return to the Mississippi.—De Soto dies.—His men again march westward to the mountains.—Return to the mouth of Red River.—Build boats and descend the Mississippi.—Reach the Spanish settlements in Mexico.—Melendez comes

to Florida, and founds St. Augustine.—Murders the Huguenots on the St. John's.—Massacres the crews of the French vessels.—Extent of the Spanish explorations.—The Portuguese voyage of Gaspar Cortereal.—He sells a cargo of Indian slaves in Portugal. 61-69.

CHAPTER V.

THE FRENCH IN AMERICA.

First acquaintance of the French with America.—Verrazzani is sent out to make explorations.—Arrives on the coast of North Carolina.—Explores the shores of the country as far north as Newfoundland.—Cartier is sent on a voyage to America.—Reaches Newfoundland and enters the Gulf and River of St. Lawrence.—Returns to Europe.—Sails on a second expedition.—Ascends the St. Lawrence to Montreal.—His crew are attacked with scurvy.—He passes the winter near the site of Quebec.—And returns to France.—Roberval undertakes to colonize the country.—Cartier joined to the undertaking.—Prisons of France are opened to furnish emigrants.—Expedition reaches the St. Lawrence.—The leaders quarrel, and Cartier goes back to France.—The whole colony returns.—Roberval sails with another fleet.—And is lost at sea.—Ribault conducts a band of Huguenots to Port Royal.—Builds Fort Carolina.—The settlement is abandoned.—The enterprise renewed by Laudonnière.—A Huguenot colony established on the St. John's River.—But destroyed by Melendez.—De Gourgues takes vengeance on the Spaniards.—La Roche is commissioned to plant colonies in America.—French prisons again opened.—A settlement is made on Sable Island.—The company rescued and carried to France.—De Monts made viceroy of New France.—Departs with a colony.—Reaches the Bay of Fundy.—Port Royal founded by Poutrincourt, and the St. Croix settlement by De Monts.—The country named Acadia.—Champlain receives a commission.—Sails with a colony to the St. Lawrence.—Goes against the Iroquois.—Returns and founds Quebec. 70-76.

CHAPTER VI.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

Henry VII. commissions John Cabot.—Who discovers North America.—Is re-commissioned.—Sebastian takes charge of the expedition.—Explores the American coast from Labrador to Cape Hatteras.—Leaves England to become pilot of Spain.—The notable year 1498.—Causes which impeded English discovery.—Maritime enterprise revives under Elizabeth.—Frobisher sails to America and discovers Meta Incognita.—Takes spurious ore to London.—A new voyage is planned.—Frobisher conducts a fleet to Meta Incognita.—The expedition proves a failure.—Sir Francis Drake captures Spanish merchantmen.—Goes to the Pacific coast.—Attempts the discovery of a north-west passage.—Gilbert forms a plan of colonization.—Is assisted by Raleigh.—Conducts a fleet to Newfoundland.—The crews find spurious minerals.—The voyage is continued to Massachusetts.—Gilbert loses his best ship and a hundred men.—Starts home, and is lost at sea.—Raleigh sends Amidas and Barlow with a colony.—They reach Roanoke Island and begin a settlement.—The place is abandoned.—Raleigh sends a second colony under Lane.—The colonists reach Roanoke and begin to build.—Difficulties arise with the Indians.—The settlement is broken up.—The colony taken home by Drake.—A new charter granted by Raleigh, and White chosen governor.—The new emigrants arrive at Roanoke.—The foundations of a town laid on the Island.—Troubles with the Indians.—Manteo is made a peer.—White returns to England.—Birth of Virginia Dare.—The fate of the colony never ascertained.—Condition of affairs in England.—White returns, and finds Roanoke deserted.—Raleigh assigns his patent to

London merchants.—Gosnold makes a voyage directly across the Atlantic.—Attempts to form a settlement on Elizabeth Island.—The place is abandoned.—Gosnold trades with the natives.—The crew demand to return.—Flattering accounts are given of the country.—An expedition is sent out under Pring.—He explores a part of the New England coast, and returns to Bristol.—Waymouth sails on a voyage.—Trades with the Indians of Maine.—Returns to England. 76-85

CHAPTER VII.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.—CONTINUED.

King James issues patents to the London and Plymouth Companies.—The London Company to plant colonies between the 34th and the 38th parallels.—The Plymouth Company to make settlements from the 41st to the 45th degree.—Gosnold, Smith, Hakluyt and Wingfield lead the affairs of the Southern Company.—No democratic principles are recognized in the charter.—A ship is sent out by the Plymouth Company.—A second vessel is dispatched to America.—A settlement is attempted at the mouth of the Kennebec.—Is abandoned in the summer of 1608.—A fleet with a colony is sent out by the London Company.—Newport commands.—They arrive in the Chesapeake.—Enter James River.—Make a landing and lay the foundations of Jamestown.—The affairs of the Plymouth Company are revived by Smith.—He explores and maps the coast of Maine and Massachusetts.—Several attempts are made to form a colony in New England.—The Plymouth Company is superseded by the Council of Plymouth.—A new plan of colonization is made, and Smith appointed admiral.—The Puritans arise in the North of England.—They remove to Amsterdam and Leyden.—Determine to remove to America.—Ask permission of the king and the Council of Plymouth.—Meet with discouragements.—Procure two vessels at their own expense.—Sail from Leyden, and afterward from Southampton.—The *Speedwell* is found unfit for the voyage, and the Pilgrims depart in the *Mayflower*.—The Pilgrims have a stormy voyage.—Come in sight of Cape Cod.—They make a frame of government.—Carver is elected governor.—The landing is delayed by bad weather.—The ship is driven by storms.—Enters Plymouth harbor.—The Puritans go ashore on the 11th of December.—Begin to build.—Are attacked with diseases.—Many of the colony die.—An early spring brings them relief. 85-91.

CHAPTER VIII.

VOYAGES AND SETTLEMENTS OF THE DUTCH.

Dutch settlements in America result from the voyages of Hudson.—He is employed by London merchants to reach the Indies.—Sails into the North Atlantic.—Fails in his effort.—Is sent on a second voyage.—And fails.—Goes into the service of the Dutch East India Company.—Sails on a third voyage.—Is driven back by the icebergs.—Turns to America.—Reaches Newfoundland.—Sails southward to the Chesapeake.—Then northward to New York harbor.—Discovers the Hudson River.—Explores that stream as far as Albany.—Returns to Dartmouth.—Is detained by the English government.—Is sent on a fourth expedition.—Discovers Hudson Strait and Bay.—Is overtaken by winter.—The crew mutiny.—Hudson is cast off among the icebergs.—Dutch vessels begin to trade at the mouth of the Hudson.—The states-general grant a right to trade.—A settlement is made on Manhattan Island.—Block explores Long Island Sound.—Christianson builds Fort Nassau.—May explores the coast of New Jersey.—Holland claims the country from Delaware Bay to Cape Cod. 92-94

PART III.

COLONIAL HISTORY.

A. D. 1607—1775.

PARENT COLONIES.

CHAPTER IX.

VIRGINIA.—THE FIRST CHARTER.

The progress of Virginia is hindered.—First settlers are of bad character.—Necessity drives them to labor.—The king gives sealed instructions.—Smith is arrested.—And excluded from the council.—He and Newport explore the James.—Return to Jamestown.—Newport goes to England.—The colonists are discouraged.—Disease ravages the settlement.—Gosnold dies.—Wingfield embezzles the funds.—And is removed from office.—Ratcliffe succeeds.—And is also impeached.—Smith takes control of the colony.—Sketch of his life.—The settlement flourishes under his care.—He explores the country, and procures supplies.—The Indians furnish provisions.—Smith explores the Chickahominy.—Is captured by the Indians.—Saves his life by stratagem.—Is carried to Orapax.—Thence to Pamunkey.—Is condemned to death.—And saved by Pocahontas.—He remains in Powhatan's household.—Is liberated.—Returns to Jamestown.—Terrifies the savages.—Deplorable condition of the settlement.—Plot to abandon the place.—Newport arrives with new immigrants.—Who are as bad as the others.—The gold-hunters go abroad.—And find mica in the sand of James River.—A ship is loaded with dirt and sent to England.—The planting season goes by.—Smith makes his great exploration of the Chesapeake.—And maps the country.—Returns.—Is elected president.—Newport arrives with more immigrants and supplies.—Progress of the colony. . . . 95-104.

CHAPTER X.

VIRGINIA.—THE SECOND CHARTER.

King James grants a new charter.—Changes are made in the form of government.—A new council is organized.—Delaware is chosen governor.—The other officers.—A fleet with five hundred emigrants sails for America.—Encounters a storm.—Two vessels are wrecked.—Seven ships reach Jamestown.—The commissioners are left on the Bermuda Islands.—Smith retains the presidency.—New settlements are projected.—Smith is wounded.—Delegates his authority to Percy.—Returns to England.—Colony suffers after his departure.—The starving time.—Gates and his companions reach Virginia.—The settlement is abandoned.—Delaware meets the colony.—And persuades them to return.—Prosperity begins.—But Delaware falls sick.—And returns to England.—Percy is deputy.—Dale arrives as governor.—Brings immigrants.—Writes for supplies and new colonists.—Who arrive.—The colony improves.—Gates is made governor.—The right of private property is recognized.—And the settlements enlarged. . . . 104-107

CHAPTER XI.

VIRGINIA.—THE THIRD CHARTER.

The London Company receive a third patent.—The colony had proved unprofitable.—Argali kidnaps Pocahontas.—Who is married to Rolfe.—They visit England.—And leave descendants in Virginia.—Argall destroys the French settlements in Acadia.—And reduces the Dutch colony of Manhattan.—Dale becomes governor of Virginia.—Tobacco is the staple of Jamestown.—And is used for money.—Argall is chosen governor.—Delaware sails for America.—And dies.—Yeadley supersedes Argall.—Abolishes martial law.—Establishes the House of Burgesses.—Slavery is introduced.—Society is low.—Women are sent over.—And married to the colonists.—A constitution is granted.—Wyatt becomes governor.—Settlements spread abroad.—The Indians become jealous.—And massacre the people.—But are defeated.—The company is opposed by the king.—A commission is appointed.—Who report against the company.—And its charter is revoked.—But liberty is planted in Virginia. 108-113

CHAPTER XII.

VIRGINIA.—THE ROYAL GOVERNMENT.

Royal government is established.—But the administration is unchanged.—Charles I. becomes king.—Recognizes the Virginia Assembly.—Yeadley is re-elected governor.—Dies.—West is chosen by the council.—Harvey arrives from England.—Land-grants vex the people.—Harvey is impeached.—But is sustained by the king.—Wyatt succeeds.—English Revolution breaks out.—King Charles is beheaded.—Monarchy is abolished.—Cromwell becomes Protector.—Virginia inclines to royalty.—Berkeley becomes governor.—The Puritans are persecuted.—An Indian war arises.—The savages are beaten.—Virginia refuses to acknowledge Parliament.—Cromwell restricts her commerce.—Sends a fleet to America.—And the Virginians submit.—Favorable terms are granted.—Peace continues during the commonwealth.—The Burgesses elect three governors.—Berkeley is thus chosen.—Accepts.—But at the Restoration renounces his acceptance.—And issues writs in the king's name.—Tyranny follows.—Commerce is restricted.—The Virginians complain.—In vain.—Charles II. gives away Virginia lands.—And finally the whole State to Arlington and Culpepper.—The Quakers and the Baptists are persecuted.—Taxes are odious.—The people rebel.—An Indian war is the excuse.—And Berkeley's tyranny the cause.—Bacon heads the insurrection.—The Indians are punished.—Berkeley abdicates.—Returns.—Captures Jamestown.—Bacon takes the place, and burns it.—Dies.—The patriots are dispersed.—And the leaders hanged.—A worse despotism is established.—Culpepper becomes governor.—Treats Virginia as an estate.—Arlington surrenders his claim.—The king recalls the grant.—And Virginia becomes a royal province.—Howard and Nicholson administer the government.—William and Mary College founded.—Andros becomes governor.—Future history of Virginia. 114-123

CHAPTER XIII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—SETTLEMENT.

The Pilgrims are saved by the coming of spring.—Health is restored.—Miles Standish is sent out to reconnoitre.—Samoset and Squanto come to Plymouth.—A treaty is made with Massasoit.—Other tribes acknowledge the sovereignty of England.—Canonius is overawed.—An unfruitful summer.—Immigrants arrive.—Are quartered on the colony.—The Pilgrims are destitute.—The new-comers found Weymouth.—The Indi-

ans plan a massacre.—And are punished by Standish.—Weymouth is abandoned.—A plentiful harvest.—Robinson remains at Leyden.—The colonial enterprise proves unprofitable.—The managers sell out to the colonists.—The Established Church is favored.—Salem is founded.—The Company of Massachusetts Bay is chartered by the king and the council.—Boston is founded.—The government is transferred to America.—A large immigration in 1630.—Winthrop is governor.—Cambridge is founded.—Watertown.—Roxbury.—Dorchester.—The colony suffers greatly.—Suffrage is restricted.—Williams protests.—And is banished.—Goes among the Indians.—Is kindly received.—Tarries at Seekonk.—Removes.—And founds Providence.—A representative government is established.—The ballot-box is introduced.—Three thousand immigrants arrive.—Vane and Peters are the leaders.—Concord is founded.—Colonies remove to the Connecticut.—Religious controversies.—Mrs. Hutchinson is banished.—She and her friends establish a republic on Rhode Island.—Harvard College is founded at Cambridge.—A printing-press is set up.—Eliot, Welde, and Mather translate the Psalms.—Liberty flourishes in Massachusetts.—Emigration is hindered by England. 123-133

CHAPTER XIV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—THE UNION.

Progress of New England.—Circumstances favor a union of the colonies.—Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven are confederated.—No other colonies are admitted.—A Body of Liberties is formed.—The two legislative branches are separated.—The English Revolution is favorable to New England.—Vane and others defend the rights of the colonies.—The Parliament demands the charter of Massachusetts.—Which is refused.—Cromwell the friend of Massachusetts.—Maine is annexed.—Early settlements in Maine.—The Quakers arrive at Boston.—Are persecuted and banished.—The death-penalty is passed against them.—Four persons are executed.—Reaction against the law.—And the law is abolished.—News of the Restoration reaches Boston.—Whalley and Goffe arrive.—And escape to Connecticut.—Vane and Peters are executed.—The Navigation Act is passed.—Its bearing on the commerce of New England.—War between England and Holland.—Charles II. attempts to subvert the colonial charters.—Commissioners are sent to Massachusetts.—Are met with resistance.—And defeated in their objects.—The colony prospers. 133-139.

CHAPTER XV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—KING PHILIP'S WAR.

Philip becomes king of the Wampanoags.—Causes of jealousy and war.—Alexander's imprisonment.—Outrages are committed.—The war begins.—Swanzy is attacked.—Philip is pursued to Mount Hope.—Escapes to Tiverton.—Is driven from the Narragansett country.—Goes to the Nipmucks.—A general war ensues.—The Narragansetts are obliged to remain neutral.—English ambassadors are massacred at Brookfield.—The town is attacked.—Rescued.—Abandoned.—Burned.—Deerfield is partly destroyed.—Lathrop attempts to bring off the harvests.—Is ambushed at Bloody Brook.—The battle.—Hadley is attacked.—Rescued by Goffe.—Springfield is assaulted.—And destroyed.—Hadley is burned.—The savages are defeated at Hatfield.—Philip repairs to the Narragansetts.—The English declare war.—And invade the country.—Philip and his forces take refuge in a swamp.—Are surrounded.—Attacked.—And utterly routed.—Ruin of the Narragansett nation.—The war continues on the frontiers.—Towns and villages are destroyed.—The savages grow feeble.—Canonchet is taken.—And put to death.—Philip's family are captured.—And sold as slaves.—Himself hunted down.—And shot.—Sub

mission of the tribes.—Losses of New England.—The English government refuses help.—Randolph comes to abridge the liberties of Massachusetts.—And is defeated.—Massachusetts purchases Maine of the heirs of Gorges.—Difficulties concerning New Hampshire.—A royal government is established in the province.—Cranfield's administration.—The king's hostility.—The charter of Massachusetts is annulled.—King Charles dies.—James II. appoints Dudley governor.—And then Andros.—The liberties of the people are destroyed.—The government of Andros is extended over New England.—But the charter of Connecticut is saved.—The Revolution of 1688.—Andros is seized, and imprisoned.—And the colonies restore their liberties. . . . 139-147.

CHAPTER XVI.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WAR AND WITCHCRAFT.

King William's War begins.—The causes.—Dover is attacked and burned.—Pemaquid is destroyed.—And then Schenectady.—And Salmon Falls.—An expedition is planned against Canada.—Phipps takes Port Royal.—But fails at Quebec.—And returns.—Paper money is issued.—Failure of the expedition against Montreal.—Phipps goes to England.—And returns as royal governor.—Oyster River is destroyed.—Haverhill is attacked and burned.—Mrs. Dustin's captivity.—The treaty of Ryawick.—The witchcraft excitement begins at Salem.—The causes.—Parris and Mather.—The trials.—Convictions.—Executions.—The reaction.—Mather's book.—Reflections. 147-153.

CHAPTER XVII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WARS OF ANNE AND GEORGE.

Causes of Queen Anne's War.—Field of operations in America.—A treaty is made with the Five Nations.—The conflict begins.—Deerfield is burned.—And the inhabitants carried captive to Canada.—Barbarities of the Indians.—An expedition is sent against Port Royal.—The attempt fails.—Is renewed in 1710.—Port Royal is taken.—And named Annapolis.—Preparations are made for invading Canada.—Nicholson commands the land forces.—And Walker the fleet.—The squadron is delayed.—Stops at Gaspé Bay.—Is shattered by a storm in the St. Lawrence.—Returns in disgrace.—The expedition by land is abandoned.—A treaty is made at Utrecht.—A separate peace is concluded with the Indians.—The people of Massachusetts resist the royal governor.—Causes of King George's War.—The conflict begins.—Importance of Louisburg.—Its conquest is planned by Shirley.—The colonies contribute men and means.—The expedition leaves Boston.—Is detained at Canseau.—Joined by Warren's fleet.—Reaches Gabarus Bay.—Invests Louisburg.—The siege.—The surrender.—Cape Breton submits.—France attempts to reconquer Louisburg.—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—Character of the Puritans. . . . 153-160.

CHAPTER XVIII.

NEW YORK.—SETTLEMENT.

Character of Sir Henry Hudson.—The East India Company govern Manhattan.—A colony is sent from Holland.—A charter is granted to the West India Company.—The Walloons arrive at New Amsterdam.—May builds Fort Nassau.—And Joris, Fort Orange.—Civil government begins in New Netherland.—May is governor.—And then Verhulst.—And Minuit.—Manhattan is purchased.—And fortified.—Friendly relations are established between the Walloons and the Puritans.—The Dutch devote themselves to the fur-trade.—Growth of the colony.—A charter is granted.—The patroons.—Five manors are laid out.—Delaware is colonized.—And then abandoned.—Van Twiller suc-

ceeds Minuit.—A fort is built at Hartford.—The English claim the Connecticut.—Sweden purposes to plant an American colony.—The project is delayed.—But renewed by Minuit.—A Swedish colony reaches the Delaware.—Settles at Christiana.—Is prosperous.—And New Netherland is jealous.—Fort Nassau is rebuilt.—Printz removes to Tinicum.—The Indians are provoked by the Dutch.—War breaks out.—A desultory contest.—The Mohawks come.—Kieft massacres the Algonquins.—The war continues.—Fate of Mrs. Hutchinson.—Underhill conquers the Indians.—Kieft the author of the war.—De Vries succeeds him. 160-167.

CHAPTER XIX.

NEW YORK.—ADMINISTRATION OF STUYVESANT.

Stuyvesant is appointed governor.—Peace established with the Indians.—Free trade succeeds monopoly.—Growth of the colony.—A boundary is established between New England and New Netherland.—The Dutch again claim New Sweden.—Build Fort Casimir.—The place is captured by the Swedes.—Stuyvesant conquers and annexes New Sweden.—The Algonquins rebel.—And are subdued.—The Indians of Ulster rise.—Burn Esopus.—Are punished.—Stuyvesant is troubled about his boundaries.—Domestic difficulties.—New Netherland lags.—The Dutch prefer English laws.—The province is granted to the Duke of York.—The duke makes good his claim.—Sends out Nicolls.—And conquers New Netherland. 167-171.

CHAPTER XX.

NEW YORK UNDER THE ENGLISH.

Nicolls settles the boundaries of New York.—New Jersey is granted to Berkeley and Carteret.—Is claimed by Nicolls.—But the claim is set aside.—The Territories.—The Dutch claim liberty.—Are disappointed.—New land-titles are issued.—Lovelace succeeds Nicolls.—And is resisted by the people.—His tyranny.—Friendship of the English and the Dutch.—War with Holland.—Evertsen reconquers New York.—But the province is restored to England.—Andros begins his government.—Proves himself a despot.—Claims the country from the Connecticut to Maryland.—Goes to Saybrook.—Is baffled by Captain Bull.—Attempts to overawe New Jersey.—And fails.—Delaware is separated from New York.—And joined to Pennsylvania.—Dongan becomes governor.—The right of representation is conceded.—Character of the Constitution.—A treaty is made with the Iroquois.—The Duke of York becomes king.—And overthrows colonial liberties.—Andros is sent out as governor of New England.—Usurps the governments of all the colonies north of the Delaware.—Leisler's insurrection.—The province yields to his authority.—Schenectady is burned.—Ingoldsby arrives as governor.—Leisler and Milborne are arrested.—Tried.—And hanged.—The Iroquois treaty is renewed.—The Indians make war on the French.—The assembly declares against arbitrary authority.—Fletcher becomes governor.—Attempts to usurp the government of Connecticut and New Jersey.—Is defeated.—Effort to establish the Episcopal Church.—The project fails.—The French invade New York.—Are repelled.—Bellomont becomes governor.—The career of Captain Kidd.—Cornbury succeeds Bellomont.—New Jersey is annexed to New York.—Cornbury's fraudulent administration.—He is overthrown.—And succeeded by Lovelace.—An unsuccessful expedition is made against Montreal.—The fleet also fails.—New York is in debt.—The treaty of Utrecht.—The Tuscarora migration.—A fort is built at Oswego.—The French fortify Niagara and Crown Point.—Crosby is sent out as governor.—Assails the freedom of the press.—The trial of Zenger.—The negro plot.—French invasions of New York.—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—Slow growth of the province.—Prospects.—Reflections. 172-183.

COLONIAL HISTORY.—CONTINUED.

MINOR EASTERN COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXI.

CONNECTICUT.

Connecticut is granted to Warwick.—And transferred to Say-and-Seal.—The Dutch fortify Hartford.—The Puritans claim the country.—Send an expedition up the Connecticut.—Found Windsor.—A colony leaves Boston.—Settles on the Connecticut.—Winthrop founds Saybrook.—The English control the river.—The Pequod War.—The Narragansetts make a treaty with the English.—The Pequods do likewise.—Violate the compact.—Attempt an alliance with the Narragansetts.—Williams defeats the project.—The Mohegans join the English.—A massacre at Wethersfield.—Mason is chosen to command.—A force is organized.—Proceeds against the Pequods.—And destroys the nation.—The coast of Long Island Sound is explored.—New Haven is founded.—The Bible for a constitution.—Civil government begins in Connecticut.—Character of the laws.—Connecticut joins the Union.—Saybrook is annexed.—A treaty is made with Stuyvesant.—War with New Netherland is threatened.—King Charles is recognized.—Winthrop is sent to England.—Obtains a charter.—Returns.—Is chosen governor.—Growth of the colony.—Andros attempts to assume the government.—Is thwarted at Saybrook.—Returns after twelve years.—Invades the assembly at Hartford.—Subverts the government.—The charter is saved.—Fletcher enters the colony.—Is baffled by Wadsworth.—Yale College is founded.—Development of the province.—Reflections. 184-192.

CHAPTER XXII.

RHODE ISLAND.

Williams founds Rhode Island.—Sketch of his life.—The Baptist Church is organized.—Civil government begins.—Character of the institutions.—Massachusetts refuses to recall Williams from exile.—A colony at Portsmouth.—The Jewish commonwealth.—Newport is founded.—The Norse tower.—A democracy is established.—Rhode Island is rejected by the Union.—Williams procures a charter.—The island of Rhode Island secedes.—Is reannexed.—Patriotism of Williams.—Charles II. reissues the charter.—Prosperity of Rhode Island.—Andros overturns the government.—Is overthrown.—Henry Bull is governor.—Reflections. 193-198.

CHAPTER XXIII.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

New Hampshire is granted to Gorges and Mason.—And colonized.—Settlements on the Piscataqua.—The province is divided.—Wheelwright purchases the Indian title.—Mason's patent is confirmed.—He dies.—Difficulties ensue.—Exeter is founded.—New Hampshire is united with Massachusetts.—The Masonian claim is revived.—The question is decided.—The two provinces are separated.—Cranfield is appointed governor.—A general assembly is convened.—Character of the laws.—The royal officers

CONTENTS.

xv

are resisted.—Andros assumes the government.—New Hampshire and Massachusetts are united.—Governed by Bellomont.—Finally separated.—The Masonian claim again.—How decided.—Suffering of the colony in the Indian wars.—Character of the people.—Reflections on the New England colonists. 198-202.

COLONIAL HISTORY.—CONTINUED.

MINOR MIDDLE COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXIV.

NEW JERSEY.

Early settlements in New Jersey.—At Bergen.—And Fort Nassau.—Grants and purchases.—The province is given to Berkeley and Carteret.—Nicolls makes a grant to Puritans.—Elizabethtown is founded.—Nicolls contends with the Carterets.—The proprietors frame a constitution.—Character of the laws.—The quit-rents.—The colonists resist payment.—Philip Carteret is deposed.—And James Carteret becomes governor.—New Jersey is retaken by Holland.—And again ceded to England.—The Duke of York has his charter renewed.—Andros comes as governor.—Carteret resists.—Berkeley sells West Jersey to Fenwick.—Philip Carteret and Andros dispute about the Eastern province.—Laurie, Lucas, and Penn buy West Jersey.—Object of the purchase.—New Jersey is divided.—Line of division. The proprietors of West Jersey issue the Concessions.—The Quakers colonize West Jersey.—The Duke of York claims the country.—Sir William Jones decides against him.—Andros's claim to East Jersey is annulled.—The Quakers convene an assembly.—And frame a constitution.—East Jersey is purchased by the Friends.—Barclay is governor.—The two Jerseys submit to Andros.—And afterward regain their liberties.—Conflicting claims to the country.—Discord.—The proprietors surrender their rights of government to the Crown.—New Jersey becomes a royal province.—Is attached to New York under Cornbury.—The people petition for a separation.—Which is granted.—Morris becomes governor.—New Jersey not injured by Indian wars.—Reflections. 203-208.

CHAPTER XXV.

PENNSYLVANIA.

The Friends are persecuted in Europe.—Penn designs to plant a Quaker State in America.—Charles II. grants the charter of Pennsylvania.—Penn relinquishes his claims on the British government.—Declares his purposes.—Writes a letter to the Swedes.—Invites emigration.—A colony departs under Markham.—The Indians are assured of friendship.—Penn frames a constitution.—The Duke of York surrenders Delaware.—Extent of Penn's dominion.—He leaves England with a second colony.—Sketch of his life.—He addresses the people at New Castle.—Passes through the Jerseys to New York.—Returns.—Makes the great treaty with the Indians.—Which is kept inviolate.—A convention is held at Chester.—A provisional constitution is adopted.—Penn visits Lord Baltimore.—Philadelphia is founded.—Growth of the

city.—Penn sails for England.—Lloyd remains as governor.—Delaware secedes.—Penn adheres to the Stuarts.—Is imprisoned.—His province is taken away.—But afterward restored.—Penn revisits America.—The constitution is modified.—Delaware is finally separated.—Penn returns to England.—Condition of his province.—Hamilton and Evans deputy governors.—Conduct of the latter.—He is removed from office.—Succeeded by Gookin.—Penn's trials in England.—He dies.—His sons become proprietors of Pennsylvania.—The province is purchased by the colonial assembly.—Reflections. 209-215

COLONIAL HISTORY—CONTINUED.

MINOR SOUTHERN COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXVI.

MARYLAND.

Clayborne is commissioned by the London Company.—Explores the Chesapeake.—Establishes trading-posts.—Sketch of Sir George Calvert's life.—He plans a Catholic colony.—Sends a company to Newfoundland.—Goes to Virginia.—Refuses the oath.—Returns to England.—Obtains a charter.—Character and extent of the patent.—Calvert dies.—Sir Cecil succeeds him.—The name of Maryland.—A colony is sent out under Leonard Calvert.—Reaches the Chesapeake.—Ascends the Potomac.—Returns.—And founds St. Mary's.—Friendly relations are established with the Indians.—Growth of the colony.—An assembly is convened.—Clayborne incites an insurrection.—Is beaten.—Escapes into Virginia.—Is sent to England.—Representative government is established.—An Indian war breaks out.—Clayborne returns to America.—Leads a second insurrection.—Overthrows the government.—The rebellion is suppressed.—Tolerant character of the laws.—Division of the legislature.—Commissioners are appointed by Parliament.—Dissensions of Stone and Clayborne.—The civil war between the Catholics and Protestants.—Fendall's rebellion.—Maryland declares independence.—Fendall is condemned.—Charles Calvert is governor.—The Protestants gain control of the State.—Maryland becomes a royal province.—The heir of Lord Baltimore is restored to his rights.—The Calverts rule the colony until the Revolution.—Reflections. . 216-224.

CHAPTER XXVII.

NORTH CAROLINA.

The name of Carolina.—Early explorations.—The country is granted to Clarendon and others.—Albemarle and Clarendon colonies are founded.—Cooper and Locke frame the grand model.—Its establishment impossible.—Clarendon county is abandoned.—The proprietors oppress the colonists.—A rebellion ensues.—Governor Culpepper goes to England.—And defends the people.—Clarendon sells his rights.—Sothel is sent out as governor.—His tyranny.—He is overthrown.—Ludwell succeeds.—And then Walker.—The colony prospers.—Decline of the Indian tribes.—A war breaks out.—Barnwell's expedition.—Peace.—And war again.—Moore invades the country of the Tuscaroras.—The savages are beaten.—The nation is divided.—The Tuscarora migration.—Division of the Carolinas.—Character of the people. . . . 224-239.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

A colony is sent out under West and Sayle.—Reaches Beaufort.—But settles on Ashley River.—Locke's constitution is rejected.—And a simple government adopted.—West becomes governor.—And then Yeamans.—Slavery is introduced.—Rapid immigration.—Charleston is founded.—An Indian war arises.—Immigrants arrive from England, Scotland, and Ireland.—The Edict of Nantes is revoked.—The Huguenots flock to South Carolina.—Colleton becomes governor.—Declares martial law.—Is overthrown.—Sothel takes the office.—Is banished.—Ludwell next.—Who retires to Virginia.—The proprietors abrogate the grand model.—The Quaker Archdale.—His wise administration.—Moore succeeds.—The war with Florida.—Moore and Daniel attempt to take St. Augustine.—And fail.—Moore makes a successful campaign against the Indians.—The Church of England is established.—The dissenters are disfranchised.—But the act is revoked by Parliament.—The Spaniards besiege Charleston.—And are repelled.—War with the Yamassees.—The savages are conquered.—Popular revolution in South Carolina.—Nicholson is governor.—The proprietors sell Carolina to the king.—A royal government is established.—Character of the people. 230-237.

CHAPTER XXIX.

GEORGIA.

Georgia founded in benevolence.—Oglethorpe the founder.—Sketch of his life.—He leads forth a colony.—And founds Savannah.—The friendly natives.—A treaty is made with the Muskogees.—Immigrants arrive from various parts of Europe.—Oglethorpe goes to England.—Returns.—The Moravians.—The Wesleys.—And Whitefield.—Conflicting claims of Georgia and Florida.—Oglethorpe builds forts.—Is commissioned as general.—War breaks out.—The governor besieges St. Augustine.—And fails.—The Spaniards invade Georgia.—Oglethorpe's stratagem.—The battle of Bloody Marsh.—The Spaniards are defeated.—And retreat to Florida.—The governor returns to England.—Slavery is introduced.—The prohibitory law is repealed.—Growth of Georgia.—Reflections on the thirteen colonies. 238-244.

COLONIAL HISTORY.—CONTINUED.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

CHAPTER XXX.

CAUSES.

The colonies begin to act together.—A sense of common danger unites them.—The French and Indian War arises.—Causes considered.—Conflicting territorial claims.—English colonies on the sea-board.—French colonies in the interior.—France purposes to confine the English to the Atlantic slope.—French settlements result from the efforts

of the Jesuits.—Missions are established on the lakes.—Joliet and Marquette discover the Mississippi.—Descend the river.—Return to Michigan.—La Salle passes through the lakes.—Descends the Illinois.—Goes to Canada.—Returns.—And explores the Mississippi to the gulf.—Sails for France.—Returns with a colony.—Reaches Texas.—Sets out for Canada.—Is murdered.—French posts are established.—The Ohio valley to be occupied.—The animosity of France and England leads to war.—The frontiersmen of the two nations come in conflict.—The Ohio Company is organized.—Obtains a grant of land.—Bienville explores and claims the Ohio valley.—Gist traverses the country to the falls of the Ohio.—The French fortify Le Boeuf and Venango.—Attack a British post.—Gist makes a second exploration.—An English colony on the Youghioghny.—The Indians favor the English.—The Half-King goes to Erie.—The chiefs confer with Franklin.—Dinwiddie sends a despatch to St. Pierre.—Washington is chosen for the mission.—Sets out by way of Will's Creek to the site of Pittsburg.—And thence to Le Boeuf.—Washington confers with St. Pierre.—And returns to Virginia.—Hardships of the journey.—Trent begins a fort at the fork of the Ohio.—The French capture the place.—And build Du Quesne.—Washington is sent to retake the fort. . . . 245-255.

CHAPTER XXXI.

CAMPAIGNS OF WASHINGTON AND BRADDOCK.

Washington marches to Great Meadows.—Builds Fort Necessity.—Attacks and defeats Jumonville.—Extends the road toward Du Quesne.—De Villiers approaches.—Attacks Fort Necessity.—And compels a surrender.—An American congress assembles at Albany.—Franklin plans a union.—The colonies reject the constitution.—France sends soldiers to America.—Braddock is sent by England.—He confers with the governors.—Plans four campaigns.—Marches his army to Fort Cumberland.—Proceeds against Du Quesne.—Approaches the fort.—Meets the French and Indians.—And is terribly defeated.—Washington saves the remnant of the army.—Death of Braddock.—Dunbar retreats.—Destroys the stores.—Evacuates Fort Cumberland.—Retires to Philadelphia. 255-261.

CHAPTER XXXII.

RUIN OF ACADIA.

Nova Scotia under English rule.—Lawrence fears an insurrection.—Is authorized to subdue the French inhabitants.—The English fleet leaves Boston.—The French forts on the Bay of Fundy.—The fleet arrives at Beau-Sejour.—The place is besieged.—And obliged to surrender.—The other forts capitulate.—The British officers determine to exile the inhabitants.—The country is laid waste.—And the people carried into banishment. 261-264.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

EXPEDITIONS OF SHIRLEY AND JOHNSON.

A campaign is planned against Niagara.—Shirley commands.—Proceeds to Oswego.—Wastes the time.—Marches homeward.—Oswego is rebuilt.—Johnson and Lyman go against the French on Lake Champlain.—Build Fort Edward.—Form a camp on Lake George.—Dieskau approaches.—Proceeds by way of Wood Creek against Fort Edward.—Meets the English.—And drives them to the camp.—The battle.—The French are defeated.—Dieskau is killed.—The English lose heavily.—Johnson builds Fort William Henry.—The French reinforce their forts. 264-266.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

TWO YEARS OF DISASTER.

Shirley becomes commander-in-chief.—Washington repels the Indians.—Franklin defends Pennsylvania.—The campaigns of 1756 are planned.—The military forces of America are consolidated.—Loudoun is commander-in-chief.—He and Abercrombie arrive in New York with soldiers and supplies.—England declares war.—Abercrombie goes to Albany.—And stays there.—Montcalm besieges and captures Oswego.—The Delawares revolt.—And are punished.—Loudoun burrows at Albany.—The French strengthen their forts.—The conquest of Louisburg is planned.—Loudoun proceeds to Halifax.—Holbourn joins him.—They muster and do nothing.—Loudoun returns to New York.—Montcalm and the Iroquois besiege and capture Fort William Henry.—The Indians massacre the prisoners.—Review of the situation. 267-270.

CHAPTER XXXV.

TWO YEARS OF SUCCESSES.

Pitt becomes prime minister.—Loudoun is deposed.—Abercrombie succeeds.—An able corps of generals sent to America.—Three campaigns are planned.—Amherst and Wolfe proceed against Louisburg.—Besiege and take the fortress.—Abercrombie attacks Ticonderoga.—And is repulsed with great loss.—Bradstreet takes Fort Frontenac.—Montcalm advises peace.—Forbes marches against Du Quesne.—Grant is defeated.—Washington leads the advance.—The French abandon and burn Du Quesne.—The place named Pittsburg.—Amherst commander-in-chief.—Relative strength of the English and the French.—Pitt plans the conquest of Canada.—Prideaux defeats the French before Niagara.—And captures the fortress.—Amherst takes Ticonderoga and Crown Point.—Wolfe proceeds against Quebec.—Reaches the Island of Orleans.—Besieges the city.—The Lower Town is destroyed.—Montcalm's position.—The battle of Montmorenci.—Wolfe's fever.—He ascends the river.—Plans an assault.—Discover's Wolfe's Cove.—Gains the Plains of Abraham.—Fights a decisive battle.—Defeats the French.—Is slain.—Quebec capitulates.—And then Montreal.—The Cherokee revolt is quelled.—The effect of the conquest of Canada. The French outposts are included in the surrender of Montreal.—Rogers is sent to take possession of the forts.—He reaches Detroit.—Receives the surrender of Forts Miami and Ouatanow.—Mackinaw, Green Bay and St. Marie afterward capitulate.—The English treat the Red men badly.—The latter become revengeful.—They make an attempt against Detroit.—And are baffled.—Conspiracies grow rife.—Pontiac organizes a confederacy.—Makes a plot for the capture of Detroit.—And fails.—An unsuccessful siege ensues.—The savages are victorious in other quarters.—They capture most of the western forts.—The confederacy breaks up.—Pontiac is abandoned.—And killed.—The war continues on the ocean.—England is victorious.—A treaty of peace.—The terms. 270-279.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

CONDITION OF THE COLONIES.

The thirteen colonies.—Institutions.—Population.—Distribution of the same.—Growth of a national character and sentiment.—Education.—Character of the same in New England.—In the South.—Colleges.—Newspapers.—Books and men.—Absence of roads.—Agriculture the predominating pursuit.—Ship-building and manufactures.—What the British Board of Trade was good for.—Reflections on the character of the Anglo-American colonists. 280-284.

PART IV.

REVOLUTION AND CONFEDERATION.

A. D. 1775—1789.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

CAUSES.

Importance of the revolution.—The question decided by it.—Character of the contest.—The causes.—Great Britain claims the right of arbitrary government.—France incites the rebellion.—The disposition of the Americans encourages independence.—Public opinion leads to the same result.—The king provokes a conflict.—Parliament passes oppressive acts.—The question of taxation.—Nature of the dispute.—The Importation Act.—Its provisions.—Writs of Assistance are issued.—And resisted.—The sugar and wine duties.—The colonists refuse to pay them.—A Stamp Act is proposed.—Indignation in the colonies.—The question of the Indian war-debt arises.—The Stamp Act is passed.—Its provisions.—The news is received in America.—The wrath of the people.—Scene in the House of Burgesses.—Patrick Henry's speech.—Passage of the resolutions.—Other assemblies pursue a similar course.—The first Colonial Congress.—A declaration of Rights is adopted.—Memorials to the king and Parliament.—The Stamp Act is resisted.—And the stamps destroyed.—Suspension of business.—The Sons of Liberty.—A non-importation agreement is made.—The wrath of England.—Camden and Pitt defend the colonists.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.—Joy follows.—Townshend renews the scheme.—Secures the passage of a glass and tea-tax.—The Americans resist the act.—Circular of Massachusetts.—Seizure of a sloop at Boston.—Insurrection of the people.—Gage takes possession of Boston.—Is ordered to arrest the patriots.—Rebellion of Virginia and North Carolina.—Conflict at New York.—The Boston massacre.—Repeal of the duties.—Passage of the Salary Act.—Burning of the Gaspee.—Stratagem of the ministry.—Tea is shipped to America.—Is spoiled at Charleston.—Refused at New York and Philadelphia.—And poured overboard at Boston.—Passage of the Port Bill.—Opposition of the Burgesses.—The charter of Massachusetts is annulled.—The people declared rebels.—The second Congress assembles.—Resolutions and addresses.—A British army is ordered to America.—Boston Neck fortified.—Military stores removed.—The assembly refuses to disband.—War becomes inevitable. . . 285-296.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE BEGINNING.

The patriots remove their stores.—Gage plans to destroy them.—Pitcairn is sent for that purpose.—Dawes and Revere arouse the people.—The British reach Lexington.—Fire on the patriots.—Proceed to Concord.—Ransack the village.—Are attacked.—And driven back to Boston.—The country is fired.—The patriots gather at Cambridge.—Allen and Arnold march against Ticonderoga.—And capture the fortress.—The British are reinforced.—Proclamation of Gage.—His plans.—The Americans fortify Breed's Hill.—Amazement of the British.—The battle.—Excitement of the people.—The North Carolinians declare independence.—The Colonial Congress assembles.—An appeal to the king.—Washington commander-in-chief.—Sketch of his life.—His duties and em-

barrassments.—Organization of the army.—Royal rule is overthrown.—Struggle with Dunmore.—Expedition against Quebec.—Led by Schuyler, Montgomery and Arnold.—Schuyler falls sick.—Montgomery takes Montreal.—Hardships of Arnold's march.—He and Montgomery unite against Quebec.—The town is invested.—The assault and defeat.—Fall of Montgomery.—The expedition is abandoned.—Sketch of Montgomery. 297-305.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE WORK OF '76.

The king answers the colonies.—Howe succeeds Gage.—Siege of Boston.—The British evacuate the city.—The Americans enter.—Public rejoicings.—Washington goes to New York.—Clinton threatens the city.—Cornwallis and Parker proceed against Charleston.—Rising of the Carolinians.—The attack on Moultrie.—Repulse of the British.—Distresses of the army.—Great Britain hires the Hessians.—And makes new levies.—Exasperation of the patriots.—The question of independence.—Lee's resolutions.—Debates.—A committee is appointed.—The Declaration of Independence adopted.—And received with enthusiasm.—Its leading principles.—Howe returns.—Lands an army.—Attempts to open negotiations.—And fails.—The British advance on Long Island.—Fight a battle.—And defeat the patriots.—Washington saves the army.—Discouragement of the people.—The British take New York.—Negotiations are again attempted.—But fail.—Movements of the two armies.—Battle of White Plains.—Disposition of the American forces.—Notice of Hamilton.—The capture of Fort Washington.—Fort Lee is taken.—The Americans retreat across New Jersey.—The pursuit ends.—Enlargement of Washington's powers.—British successes in Rhode Island.—Lee's capture.—Washington recruits his army.—Recrosses the Delaware.—Defeats the British at Trenton.—Effect of the battle.—Alarm of the British.—Robert Morris to the rescue.—Washington threatens the British posts. 305-317.

CHAPTER XL.

OPERATIONS OF '77.

The British advance against Trenton.—Washington withdraws his forces.—Attacks Princeton.—And wins a victory.—Takes post at Morristown.—The British at New Brunswick.—Cornwallis on the defensive.—Destruction of stores at Peekskill.—Lincoln attacked at Boundbrook.—Tryon burns Danbury.—Is attacked and driven away.—Meigs takes Sag Harbor.—Washington advances into New Jersey.—The British threaten Philadelphia.—Retire to Amboy.—Leave the State.—Barton captures Prescott.—Congress returns to Philadelphia.—Help from France.—Coming of La Fayette and De Kalb.—Plan of Burgoyne's campaign.—The invasion begins.—Fall of Crown Point and Ticonderoga.—The battle of Hubbardton.—Capture of Whitehall.—Fort Edward is taken.—Schuyler retreats to the Mohawk.—The British advance is impeded.—The battle of Bennington.—St. Leger besieges Schuyler.—Herkimer brings relief.—And is defeated.—Arnold advances.—The Indians desert the British.—St. Leger retreats.—Discouragement of Burgoyne.—Gathering of the Americans.—Burgoyne at Saratoga.—The first battle.—Critical condition of the British.—A diversion is attempted by Clinton.—But fails.—The second battle.—The Americans victorious.—Burgoyne is surrounded.—And driven to surrender.—The army of the North relieves Washington.—The movement of Howe against Philadelphia.—He enters the Chesapeake.—The battle of Brandywine.—Retreat of the Americans.—Washington advances to Warren's Tavern.—A storm prevents the battle.—Countermarching of the armies.—The British capture Philadelphia.—Congress adjourns to Lancaster.—Washington on Skippack Creek.—The

battle of Germantown.—Capture of Forts Mercer and Mifflin.—The Americans at Whitemarsh.—Adventure of Lydia Darrah.—The British winter at Philadelphia.—The Americans at Valley Forge.—Sorrows of Washington. 317-328.

CHAPTER XLI.

FRANCE TO THE RESCUE.

Silas Deane is sent to France.—His mission.—France favors the Americans.—Supplies are sent to the patriots.—Steuben arrives.—Lee and Franklin are appointed to negotiate a treaty.—Franklin's influence at the French court.—A treaty is concluded.—Sketch of Franklin.—Arrival of D'Estaing's fleet.—War threatened between France and England.—Effort of Great Britain for peace.—The British fleet at Philadelphia.—Withdrawal of the squadron.—The city evacuated.—Washington pursues.—The battle of Monmouth.—Lee disobeys orders.—Is court-martialed and dismissed.—British concentrate at New York.—The city threatened by D'Estaing.—He sails against Rhode Island.—Sullivan co-operates against Newport.—Howe follows D'Estaing.—Both squadrons shattered by a storm.—The siege of Newport.—Abandonment of the enterprise.—Destruction of American shipping.—Byron succeeds Howe.—Marauding of the British.—The Wyoming massacre.—Ruin of Cherry Valley.—The expedition of Major Clarke.—The French and British fleets sail away.—A force is sent against Savannah.—Capture of the city.—The situation. 328-333.

CHAPTER XLII.

MOVEMENTS OF '79.

Hardships of the soldiers.—Tryon's expedition.—Is attacked by the militia.—Putnam's exploit.—Fall of Stony Point and Verplank's.—Insurrection in Virginia.—Tryon invades Connecticut.—Destruction of East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk.—Stony Point is retaken by Wayne.—Lee captures Jersey City.—An American flotilla sails to the Penobscot.—Is ruined.—Sullivan ravages the Indian country.—The British evacuate Rhode Island.—War in the South.—Fort Sunbury is taken.—Fall of Augusta.—Anderson defeats the Tories.—Pickens gains a victory.—Augusta is evacuated.—Defeat of Lincoln's army.—The militia rally.—Lincoln takes the field.—Threatens Augusta.—Returns to Charleston.—Is beaten at Stono Ferry.—Suspension of activity.—D'Estaing arrives.—Siege of Savannah.—The unsuccessful assault.—Paul Jones's victory.—Reflections. 334-339.

CHAPTER XLIII.

REVERSES AND TREASON.

Operations in the North suspended.—Ternay's fleet arrives.—Campaigns are planned.—Arbuthnot and Clinton besiege Charleston.—The city is taken.—Ravages of Tarleton.—Plan of the British to conquer South Carolina.—Capture of Ninety-Six.—Cornwallis's success.—Tarleton's massacre.—South Carolina is subjugated.—Clinton returns to New York.—Marion and Sumter's bands.—They scour the country.—Their victories.—Gates takes command.—The British at Camden.—Gates advances against them.—Is met and defeated.—Is superseded by Greene.—Sumter's corps is broken up.—Cruelty of the British.—Rawdon advances into North Carolina.—Ferguson's Tories are defeated.—Financial distresses.—Sacrifices of Morris.—The treason of Arnold.—Sketch of his career.—André is sent to a conference.—The interview.—André attempts to return to New York.—Is captured, condemned, and executed.—Treaty with Holland. 339-345.

CHAPTER XLIV.

THE END.

Desperate condition of the army.—The Pennsylvania line revolt.—Mutiny of the Jersey brigade.—Robert Morris secretary of finance.—Champe attempts to capture Arnold.—Fails.—Arnold's expedition to Virginia.—Second plan to capture him.—He becomes commander-in-chief in Virginia.—Is superseded.—And ordered out of the State.—Leads a band into Connecticut.—Captures Fort Griswold.—Greene in the South.—Advances into South Carolina.—Morgan at the Cowpens.—Is attacked by Tarleton.—But defeats him.—Cornwallis attempts to cut off Morgan's retreat.—Greene takes command.—Crosses the Catawba.—Race for the Yadkin.—Greene wins it.—Race for the Dan.—Greene wins it.—Chagrin of the British.—Greene turns upon the enemy.—Lee disperses the Tories.—Greene moves forward to Guilford.—Cornwallis attacks him.—An indecisive battle.—The British retreat to Wilmington.—Cornwallis goes to Virginia.—The Americans advance into South Carolina.—The battle of Hobkirk's Hill.—The British retire to Eutaw Springs.—The siege of Ninety-Six.—The place is abandoned by the enemy.—Greene in the Highlands.—Sumter, Lee, and Marion overrun the country.—Execution of Hayne.—Greene advances against Eutaw Springs.—The battle.—The British retreat to Charleston.—The situation.—The campaign in Virginia.—Cornwallis ravages the State.—Marches down the James.—Is attacked by Wayne.—Proceeds to Portsmouth.—And thence to Yorktown.—The Army of the North comes down upon him.—The French fleet co-operates.—Yorktown is besieged.—And Cornwallis's army taken.—Rejoicings.—Fall of the king's party in Parliament.—Negotiations for peace.—A treaty is concluded.—Its terms.—Carleton supersedes Clinton.—Evacuation of New York.—Washington bids farewell to his officers.—Retires to private life. 345-356.

CHAPTER XLV.

CONFEDERATION AND UNION.

Bad condition of the government.—Its defects.—Franklin pleads for union.—A committee appointed to prepare a Constitution.—The Articles of Confederation are adopted.—The colonies are slow to ratify.—The Confederation.—Defects of the same.—Chaotic condition of affairs.—A firmer Constitution is projected.—The convention at Annapolis.—Adjournment to Philadelphia.—The Constitution is reported to the convention.—And adopted.—The last colonial Congress.—Its final work.—The North-western Territory is organized.—The several States cede their rights away.—St. Clair appointed governor.—Plan of organization.—Slavery is restricted.—The people divide on the question of adopting the Constitution.—Sketch of Hamilton.—Character of the Constitution.—Amendments thereto.—The struggle in the colonial conventions.—Ratification by eleven States.—Washington is chosen President.—John Adams for the vice-presidency.—Washington's journey to New York.—Conclusion. 356-362.

PART V.

NATIONAL PERIOD.

CHAPTER XLVI.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Washington is inaugurated President.—And the new government organized.—The country is beset with difficulties.—A cabinet is formed.—The Supreme Court is organized.—Rhode Island and North Carolina ratify the Constitution.—Washington makes a tour through New England.—Presidential etiquette.—Hamilton's financial measures.—The seat of government is fixed.—An Indian war breaks out.—Harmar marches against the Miamis.—Is defeated on the Maumee.—The Bank of the United States is established.—Vermont is admitted into the Union.—The first census.—St. Clair is sent against the Indians.—His army is defeated.—The wrath of Washington.—St. Clair is superseded by Wayne.—Kentucky is admitted.—Washington re-elected.—The foreign relations of the government are troubled.—Genet's conduct.—Fouchet supersedes him.—Troubles in the President's cabinet.—Antagonism of Jefferson and Hamilton.—The whisky insurrection breaks out.—Is suppressed by Lee.—Wayne invades the Indian country.—Defeats the Red men at Waynesfield.—Compels a cession of territory.—Dies.—Great Britain orders the seizure of American vessels.—Jay procures reparation and a treaty.—Popular opposition thereto.—The compact with Spain.—Peace is purchased of Algiers.—Tennessee is admitted.—Washington issues his Farewell address.—The candidates for the Presidency.—Adams is elected.—Jefferson for Vice-President. 363-371.

CHAPTER XLVII.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of John Adams.—Opposition to the new administration.—France demands an alliance.—Orders the destruction of American commerce.—Pinckney is dismissed.—The extra session of Congress.—Gerry, Marshall, and Pinckney are sent to France.—The Directory want money.—Pinckney's answer.—An American army is organized.—Washington commander-in-chief.—The work of the navy.—Truxtun's victories.—Doings of Talleyrand.—Napoleon seeks peace.—The successful embassy of Murray, Ellsworth, and Davie.—Death of Washington.—Close of the administration.—Growth of the country.—The Alien and Sedition laws.—Overthrow of the Federal party.—Jefferson is elected President.—And Burr Vice-President. 372-376.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of Jefferson.—He puts Democrats in office.—Ohio is admitted.—Indiana and Mississippi organized.—Louisiana is purchased from France.—Boundaries.—The territory of Orleans is set off.—John Marshall in the chief-justiceship.—The Mediter-

anean pirates.—Preble is sent against them.—The *Philadelphia* is captured.—Retaker and burned.—The siege of Tripoli.—Expedition of Eaton.—Yusef signs a treaty.—The duel of Burr and Hamilton.—Jefferson is re-elected.—Michigan is organized.—Lewis and Clarke explore Oregon.—Burr makes a conspiracy.—Is tried for treason.—British aggressions on American commerce.—England blockades the coast of France.—Napoleon retaliates.—Great Britain forbids the coasting trade.—An old abuse revived.—The rule of 1756 again asserted.—The effect on American commerce.—The English theory of citizenship.—The object of that theory.—The attack of the *Leopard* on the *Chesapeake*.—Passage of the Embargo Act.—The Orders in Council and Milan Decree.—Fulton and his steamboat.—Invention of the torpedo.—Summary of events. 376-388.

CHAPTER XLIX.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION AND THE WAR OF '12.

Sketch of the life and previous services of Madison.—His politics.—The Non-intercourse Act takes the place of the Embargo.—Erskine promises the repeal of the Orders in Council.—The promise not fulfilled.—Bonaparte makes a decree.—And then revokes it.—Obstinacy of Great Britain.—A crisis is reached.—Third census.—Tecumtha and the Prophet.—Harrison purchases lands.—Tecumtha refuses to ratify.—Harrison marches up the Wabash Valley.—Approaches the Prophet's town.—Is attacked by night.—And routs the savages.—Fight of the *President* and *Little Belt*.—The twelfth Congress.—War inevitable.—The President's timid disposition.—Henry's conspiracy is discovered.—Nature of the plot.—Effect of the disclosure.—British vessels are embargoed.—Louisiana is admitted.—War declared against England.—Preparations.—Relative strength of the belligerents.—Hull's campaign.—He marches to the head of Lake Erie.—Reaches Detroit.—Invades Canada.—Retreats.—Van Horne's defeat.—Miller's victory.—Siege of Detroit.—Hull's disgraceful surrender.—He is convicted of cowardice.—Capture and burning of Fort Dearborn.—Character assumed by the war.—Sketch of the American defences.—The *Constitution* captures the *Guerriere*.—The *Wasp* the *Frolic*.—The *Poictiers* the *Wasp*.—The *United States* the *Macedonian*.—The *Essex* the *Nocton*.—And the *Constitution* the *Java*.—Effect of these victories.—Comment of the English newspapers.—Van Rensselaer moves against Queenstown.—Carries the batteries.—Death of Brock.—The Americans entrench.—But are forced to surrender.—Smyth succeeds Van Rensselaer.—And makes a fool of himself.—The Americans at Black Rock cross and recross the river.—Madison re-elected. 388-399.

CHAPTER L.

WAR OF '12.—CONTINUED.

Plan of the campaigns of '13.—The Americans capture Frenchtown.—Are assailed by Proctor.—Surrender.—And are butchered.—Harrison at Fort Meigs.—He is besieged.—Clay raises the siege.—Proctor and Tecumtha return.—Attack Fort Stephenson.—And are defeated by Croghan.—Affairs on Lake Erie.—Perry builds a fleet.—Attacks the British squadron.—And gains a signal victory.—Harrison embarks his forces to Malden.—Follows the British and Indians to the Thames.—And routs them in battle.—The Creeks massacre the garrison at Fort Mims.—Jackson and Coffee with the Tennesseans.—They burn Tallushatchie.—Battles of Talladega and Autosse.—Winter and starvation.—Battle of Emucfau.—And Horse Shoe Bend.—Dearborn proceeds against Toronto.—Battle at the water's edge.—The Americans capture the town.—The British attack Sackett's Harbor.—The Americans on the Niagara.—They storm Fort George.—Suspension of operations.—Wilkinson is made

commander-in-chief.—Expedition against Montreal.—The battle of Chrysler's Field.—The expedition is abandoned.—Winter quarters at Fort Covington.—McClure evacuates Fort George.—Burns Newark.—The British retaliate.—The *Hornet* captures the *Peacock*.—The *Chesapeake* is taken by the *Shannon*.—Death of Lawrence.—Capture of the *Argus*.—The *Enterprise* takes the *Boxer*.—The *Essex* is captured by the *Phoebe* and *Cherub*.—A British fleet bombards Lewiston.—Marauding in the Chesapeake. 400-407.

CHAPTER LI.

CAMPAIGNS OF '14.

Scott and Ripley capture Erie.—Battles of Chippewa and Niagara.—The Americans retreat to Erie.—Siege of that place by the British.—They are driven off.—Winter quarters at Black Rock.—Wilkinson again invades Canada.—Is defeated at La Colle.—And retreats to Plattsburg.—McDonough's squadron on the lake.—The British advance.—Attack by land and water.—And are defeated.—Cochrane and Ross in the Chesapeake.—Barney destroys his vessels.—Battle of Bladensburg.—Washington is captured by the British.—Public buildings burned.—Alexandria pays a ransom.—Siege of Baltimore.—Ravages in New England.—The Federal peace party.—The Hartford Convention.—Jackson captures Pensacola.—Takes command at New Orleans.—Approach of the British.—Skirmishing and fighting.—The decisive battle.—Ruin of Pakenham's army.—The news of peace.—Sea-fights afterward.—The treaty of Ghent.—Great rejoicings.—Terms of the treaty.—Condition of the country.—Rechartering of the United States Bank.—The Mediterranean pirates again.—Decatur sent out against them.—He captures a Moorish ship.—And then another.—Enters the Bay of Algiers.—And dictates the terms of peace.—Indiana is admitted.—Liberia founded.—Monroe is elected President. 407-416.

CHAPTER LII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

The new President and his policy.—The cabinet.—Revival of the country.—Demand for the recognition of Hayti.—Treaty with the Northwestern Indians.—Mississippi is admitted.—The pirates of Amelia Island dispersed.—The question of internal improvements arises.—The canal from Buffalo to Albany.—The Seminole war breaks out.—Jackson invades the hostile country.—Captures St. Marks.—Hangs Arbuthnot and Ambrister.—Takes Pensacola.—An excitement follows.—Which leads to the cession of Florida.—Great financial crisis of 1819.—Illinois is admitted.—And Alabama.—Arkansas is organized.—And Maine admitted.—And Missouri.—The slavery agitation.—And Missouri Compromise.—Its terms.—Monroe and Tompkins are re-elected.—Commodore Porter suppresses piracy in the West Indies.—Sympathy of the United States for the South American republics.—The Monroe Doctrine.—The visit of *La Fayette*.—Excitement attending the presidential election.—John Quincy Adams chosen. 416-423.

CHAPTER LIII.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of the President.—Partisan opposition in Congress.—Internal improvements favored by the executive.—Trouble with Georgia about the lands of the Creeks.—Settled by a treaty.—Death of Adams and Jefferson.—The Masonic excitement in

CONTENTS.

xxvii

New York.—Discussion of the tariff in Congress.—A protective duty laid on fabrics.—A new departure in American history.—Adams renominated for the Presidency.—General Jackson put forward by the Democrats.—And elected. . . . 423-426.

CHAPTER LIV.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of Jackson's life and character.—He fills the offices with his political friends.—Opposes the rechartering of the United States Bank.—And vetoes the bill.—The new political organization.—Sketch of parties.—The tariff question again.—South Carolina attempts nullification.—Debate of Webster and Hayne.—The President's proclamation.—South Carolina recedes from her position.—Mr. Clay's tariff compromise.—The Black Hawk war breaks out.—Generals Scott and Atkinson are sent against the Red men.—Who are driven to submission.—The difficulty with the Cherokees.—Character of that race.—The wrongs done to them.—Scott compels their removal to the West.—A second Seminole war.—The arrest of Osceola.—His release and conspiracy.—Dade's massacre.—Murder of General Thompson.—Clinch fights the savages and retreats.—Gaines defeats the Indians on the Withlacoochie.—Battle of the Wahoo Swamp.—A second fight.—The President orders the distribution of the funds.—A panic follows.—The President is vituperated.—Is censured by Congress.—But re-elected.—He brings France and Portugal to terms.—Death-list of eminent men.—Fires in New York and Washington.—Arkansas and Michigan admitted into the Union.—Jackson's farewell address.—Van Buren elected President. . . . 426-436.

CHAPTER LV.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of the new executive.—Another monetary disturbance.—Continuance of the Seminole war.—Colonel Taylor hunts the savages to Lake Okeechobee.—Defeats them.—And compels submission.—The financial panic of '37.—Causes which led thereto.—Especially the Specie Circular.—The banks suspend.—Tremendous failures.—Treasury notes are issued.—The Independent Treasury Bill is discussed.—And finally passed.—Partial revival of business.—The Canada insurrection.—Affair of the *Caroline*.—Wool is sent to the Niagara.—Order is restored.—An early presidential canvass.—Uneventful character of Van Buren's administration.—The sixth census.—General Harrison is elected President. . . . 436-440

CHAPTER LVI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER.

Sketch of the President's life.—He enters upon his duties.—Falls sick.—And dies.—Tyler succeeds to the Presidency.—Sketch.—Repeal of the Independent Treasury Bill.—A bill is passed to recharter the United States Bank.—And vetoed by the President.—The bankrupt law.—Rupture between the executive and Congress.—Resignation of the cabinet.—The north-eastern boundary is settled by the Webster-Ashburton treaty.—The Rhode Island insurrection.—The suffrage party elects Dorr.—And the law-and-order party, King.—The latter is supported by the government.—Dorr's followers are scattered.—And himself convicted of treason.—But afterward pardoned.—Building and dedication of Bunker Hill monument.—The Van Rensselaer land troubles in New York.—The Mormons.—They are driven from Missouri.—Found Nauvoo.—Popular feeling against them.—Smith and his brother are murdered.—And the Mormons driven

into exile.—They journey to Salt Lake.—The Texas excitement begins.—Outline of Texas history.—The people rebel against Mexico.—Battle of Gonzales.—Capture of the Alamo.—And massacre of the garrison.—The battle of San Jacinto decides the contest.—Texas independent.—Seeks admission into the Union.—Is refused at first.—The people of the United States divide on the question of annexation.—On that issue Polk is elected President.—Professor Morse and the telegraph.—Texas admitted into the Union. 440-447.

CHAPTER LVII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION AND THE MEXICAN WAR.

Sketch of President Polk.—Texas ratifies the annexation.—General Taylor sent to defend the country.—The boundary question.—Proposition to negotiate.—Mexico refuses.—Taylor ordered to the Neuces.—And thence to the Rio Grande.—He establishes a post at Point Isabel.—And builds Fort Brown.—Beginning of hostilities by the Mexicans.—Taylor retires to Point Isabel.—Mexican boasting.—Returns toward Matamoras.—Meets the Mexicans.—Fights and gains the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.—Siege of Fort Brown.—News of the battles in the United States.—Declaration of War.—Plan of the campaigns.—General Wool musters the forces.—Taylor captures Matamoras.—Advances against Monterey.—Besieges and storms the town.—An armistice.—Santa Anna made President of Mexico and general of the army.—Saltillo is taken by Worth.—Victoria by Patterson.—And Tampico by Conner.—Wool advances.—And Scott assumes command.—Kearney captures Santa Fé.—Moves westward.—Is joined by Carson.—And marches to the Pacific coast.—The deeds of Colonel Fremont.—Rebellion of the Californians.—They defeat the Mexicans.—Monterey, San Diego, and Los Angeles taken.—Battle of San Gabriel.—The march and battles of Colonel Doniphan.—Taylor's and Wool's forces ordered to the coast.—Critical condition of Taylor's army.—Approach of Santa Anna.—Battle of Buena Vista.—Retirement of Taylor from the service.—Scott besieges and captures Vera Cruz.—Marches against the capital.—Battle of Cerro Gordo.—Jalapa, Perote, and Puebla are taken.—Negotiations.—The march renewed.—The army passes the Cordilleras.—Reaches Ayotla.—Turns to the left.—The approaches and fortifications of the city.—Storming of Contreras and San Antonio.—Churubusco is carried.—The Mexicans driven back to Chapultepec.—More foolish negotiations.—Scott rests his army.—And then advances.—Molino del Rey and Casa de Mata are stormed.—Chapultepec is taken.—Flight of the Mexican government.—The American army enters the city.—Santa Anna attacks the hospitals at Puebla.—Is driven off by General Lane.—Downfall of the Mexican authority.—The treaty of Gaudalupe Hidalgo.—Its terms.—Settlement of the Oregon boundary.—The international line established on the forty-ninth parallel.—The discovery of gold in California.—The excitement which ensued.—Importance of the mines.—Founding of the Smithsonian Institution.—Death of Jackson and John Quincy Adams.—Wisconsin is admitted.—Establishment of the Department of the Interior.—The canvass for President.—Rise of the Free Soil party.—The Wilmot proviso.—Election of Taylor to the presidency. 447-462

CHAPTER LVIII.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE.

Sketch of the chief magistrate.—The question of slavery in California.—A territorial government is organized.—A petition for admission.—The controversy in Congress.—Other political vexations.—Clay as a peace-maker.—Passage of the Omnibus Bill.—And its provisions.—Death of the President.—The slavery excitement subsides.

CONTENTS.

xxix

—The question not permanently settled.—Retirement of Mr. Clay.—Effects of the Omnibus Bill on the administration.—The Cuban expedition is organized.—Lopez and his associates are executed.—Important measures recommended by the President.—A difficulty arises about the coast-fisheries.—And is settled by a treaty.—The tour of Kossuth.—Arctic expeditions of Franklin, De Haven, and Kane.—Death of Calhoun, Clay, and Webster.—The Cuban excitement in Europe.—The Tripartite Treaty is proposed.—And rejected.—Everett's reply to France and Great Britain.—The candidates for the presidency.—Pierce is elected. 463-469.

CHAPTER LIX.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of Franklin Pierce.—A route for a Pacific railroad is explored.—Settlement of the boundary of New Mexico.—The Japanese ports are opened to the United States.—The World's Fair.—Walker organizes a filibustering expedition against Central America.—Is captured.—Makes a second descent on Nicaragua.—And then a third.—Is defeated, captured, and executed.—The Martin Koszta affair.—Cuban difficulties.—The Ostend manifesto.—A bill to organize Kansas and Nebraska is passed.—Repeal of the Missouri Compromise.—Renewal of the slavery agitation.—The troubles in Kansas.—Two territorial governments are organized.—Geary sent thither as military governor.—Marshaling of parties on the slavery question.—Buchanan is elected to the presidency. 469-474.

CHAPTER LX.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of the President.—The Dred Scott decision.—The Mormon rebellion in Utah.—Is suppressed by the army.—A difficulty arises with Paraguay.—But is settled by treaty.—The first Atlantic cable is laid.—Minnesota is admitted.—Retirement and sketch of Houston.—Death of Washington Irving.—His work in American literature.—The Personal Liberty bills.—John Brown's insurrection.—Continuance of the troubles in Kansas.—The political parties again divide on the slavery question.—The National conventions.—The candidates and the canvass.—Lincoln is elected President.—Condition of affairs in the government.—Position of Buchanan.—The drama of secession.—Seven States withdraw from the Union.—The secession conventions.—Position of Stephens.—Organization of the Provisional Confederate government.—Davis for President.—The peace movements end in failure.—Paralysis of the administration.—Seizure of forts and arsenals by the Confederates.—The strife in Kansas continues.—The *Star of the West* is driven off from Fort Sumter.—The President elect reaches Washington. 474-482.

CHAPTER LXI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION AND THE CIVIL WAR.

Sketch of Abraham Lincoln.—Organization of his cabinet.—His purpose to repossess the forts of the United States.—Preparations to reinforce Fort Sumter.—Confederate movements in Charleston.—Bombardment and fall of Fort Sumter.—The event fires the nation.—The call for troops.—Secession of Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee.—The soldiers attacked in Baltimore.—Capture of Harper's Ferry and the Norfolk navy yard.—Prodigious activity and preparations.—Davis and his cabinet at Richmond. 482-485.

CHAPTER LXII.

THE CAUSES.

The causes.—First, the different construction of the Constitution in the North and the South.—Fatal character of this dispute.—Second, the system of slavery.—The cotton gin.—The Missouri agitation.—The annexation of Texas, and the Mexican War.—The nullification measures of South Carolina.—The Omnibus Bill.—The Kansas-Nebraska imbroglio.—Third, the want of intercourse between the North and the South.—Fourth, the publication of sectional books.—Fifth, the influence of demagogues. 485-488.

CHAPTER LXIII.

FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR.

Advance of the Union army.—Fight at Big Bethel.—Morris and McClellan move forward in West Virginia.—Engagements at Philippi, Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford, Carnifex Ferry, Cheat Mountain, and Romney.—The Confederates concentrate at Manassas.—The national forces advance.—The skirmish, the battle, and the rout.—Effect on the country.—The Confederate government at Richmond.—Sketch of Davis.—Affairs in Missouri.—Confederates capture Liberty.—Form Camp Jackson.—Lyon defends St. Louis.—Battles of Carthage and Springfield.—Price captures Lexington.—Fremont pursues him.—And is superseded.—Grant captures Belmont.—McClellan is made commander-in-chief.—The disaster at Ball's Bluff.—Hatteras inlet, Port Royal, and Hilton Head secured by the Federals.—Capture of Mason and Slidell.—They are released by Mr. Seward. 490-495.

CHAPTER LXIV.

CAMPAIGNS OF '62.

Extent and position of the Union forces.—The Confederates defeated on the Big Sandy and at Mill Spring.—Fort Henry is taken.—Siege and capture of Fort Donelson.—Battle of Shiloh.—Island Number Ten is taken.—The battle of Pea Ridge.—Fight of the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*.—Burnside captures Roanoke Island, Newbern, and Beaufort.—Savannah is blockaded.—Farragut and Butler ascend the Mississippi.—Pass Forts Jackson and St. Philip.—Capture of New Orleans.—Fall of Jackson and St. Philip.—Kirby Smith invades Kentucky.—Battle of Richmond.—Bragg marches on Louisville.—The city held by Buell.—Bragg retreats.—Battle of Perryville.—Battles of Iuka and Corinth.—Grant moves against Vicksburg.—Retreats.—Battle of Chickasaw Bayou.—Battle of Murfreesborough.—Banks and Jackson in the Shenandoah Valley.—Fight at Front Royal.—The Federals retreat across the Potomac.—The Confederates fall back in turn.—Battles of Cross Keys and Port Republic.—McClellan advances.—Beginning of the Peninsular campaign.—Yorktown is taken.—Then Williamsburg and West Point.—Wool captures Norfolk.—The *Virginia* destroyed.—Battle of Fair Oaks.—Lee made general-in-chief of the Confederates.—McClellan changes base.—The seven days' battles.—The Union army at Harrison's Landing.—Lee strikes for Washington.—Is opposed by Pope.—Flank movement of Jackson.—Battles of Manassas, Centreville, and Chantilly.—Lee invades Maryland.—Harper's Ferry is taken.—Engagement at South Mountain.—Battle of Antietam.—Confederates retreat.—Burnside in command.—Plans a campaign against Richmond.—Advances against Fredericksburg.—And is defeated. 495-510.

CHAPTER LXV.

THE WORK OF '63.

Proportions of the conflict.—New calls for troops.—The Emancipation Proclamation.—Capture of Arkansas Post.—Movements against Vicksburg.—The fleet passes the batteries.—Grant at Bruinsburg.—Battles of Port Gibson, Raymond, Jackson, and Champion Hills.—The siege and capture of Vicksburg.—Fall of Port Hudson.—Cavalry raids of Jackson, Stuart, and Grierson.—Rosecrans drives Bragg across the Tennessee.—Battle of Chattanooga.—And the siege.—Storming of Lookout and Missionary Ridge.—Longstreet in Tennessee.—Siege of Knoxville.—Engagements at Springfield, Cape Girardeau, and Helena.—The sacking of Lawrence.—Capture of Little Rock.—Morgan invades Indiana.—Passes into Ohio.—Is hemmed in and captured.—The Confederates take Galveston.—The siege of Charleston.—Hooker commands the Army of the Potomac.—Battle of Chancellorsville.—Death of Stonewall Jackson.—Stoneman's raid.—Siege of Suffolk.—Lee invades Pennsylvania.—The battle of Gettysburg.—Retreat of the Confederates.—The conscription.—Riot in New York.—The draft.—New calls for soldiers.—West Virginia a State. 510-523.

CHAPTER LXVI.

THE CLOSING CONFLICTS.

Sherman's campaign to Meridian.—Smith fails to form a junction.—Sherman retires to Vicksburg.—Forrest's raid.—The Red River expedition.—Plan of the campaign.—Capture of Fort de Russy, Alexandria, and Natchitoches.—Union disaster and retreat.—Steele falls back to Little Rock.—Grant lieutenant-general.—Plan of the campaigns of '64.—Sherman advances.—Battles of Dalton, Resaca, and Dallas.—Attacks and repulses at Kenesaw.—The Confederates fall back to Atlanta.—Siege and capture of the stronghold.—Hood invades Tennessee.—Thomas sent to confront him.—Battle of Franklin.—Siege of Nashville.—Rout and ruin of Hood's army.—Sherman's march to the sea.—Capture of Macon, Milledgeville, Gibson, and Waynesborough.—Storming of Fort McAllister.—Escape of Hardee.—And capture of the city.—The Union army in Savannah.—Renewal of the march.—Columbia, Charleston, and Fayetteville are taken.—Battle of Kilpatrick's and Hampton's Cavalry.—Johnston restored to command.—Battles of Averasborough and Bentonville.—Capture of Goldsborough and Raleigh.—Great raid of Stoneman.—Surrender of Johnston.—Farragut enters Mobile Bay.—Defeats the Confederate squadron.—Captures Forts Gaines and Morgan.—Fort Fisher is besieged by Porter and Butler.—The first effort fails.—The siege is renewed.—And the fort taken by storm.—Cushing's exploit.—The Confederate cruisers.—Injury done to the commerce of the United States.—The *Savannah*.—Career of the *Sumter*.—Cruise of the *Nashville*.—The Confederates use the British ship-yards.—Building of the *Florida*.—Her fate.—The *Georgia*, the *Olustee*, the *Shenandoah*, and the *Chickamauga* built at Glasgow.—End of the *Chickamauga* and the *Tallahassee*.—Career of the *Georgia* and the *Shenandoah*.—The *Alabama*.—Her character.—She scourges the ocean.—Runs into Cherbourg.—Is caught by the *Kearsarge*.—And destroyed.—The Army of the Potomac moves from Culpepper.—Reaches the Wilderness.—The battles.—Grant advances to Spottsylvania.—Terrible fighting there.—The Union army moves to Cold Harbor.—Is repulsed in two battles.—Losses.—Grant changes base.—Butler captures Bermuda and City Point.—Is driven back by Beauregard.—Junction of the armies.—Advance on Petersburg.—The assaults.—The siege begins.—Sigel on the Shenandoah.—Battle of New Market.—Hunter in command.—Engagement at Piedmont.—Retreat of Hunter.—Early enters the valley.—Crosses the Potomac.—Defeats Wallace.—Threatens Wash-

ington and Baltimore.—Retreats into Virginia.—Fight at Winchester.—The Confederates burn Chambersburg.—Sheridan is sent into the valley.—Battles of Winchester and Fisher's Hill.—Sheridan ravages the country.—Early comes.—Routs the Federals at Cedar Creek.—Sheridan returns, and destroys Early's army.—The siege of Petersburg continues.—Battles of Boydtown and Five Forks.—Flight of the Confederate government.—Fall of Petersburg and Richmond.—Surrender of Lee.—Collapse of the Confederacy.—The Federal authority is re-established.—Capture, imprisonment, and trial of Davis.—Lincoln re-elected.—Financial condition of the country.—Treasury notes.—Internal Revenue.—Legal Tenders.—Bonds.—Banks.—The debt.—Lincoln is reinaugurated.—Visits Richmond.—Is assassinated.—Punishment of his murderers.—Character of Lincoln. 523-543.

CHAPTER LXVII.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Johnson in the presidency.—Sketch of his life and character.—Slavery is formally abolished.—The Amnesty Proclamation.—A struggle with the war-debt.—Napoleon's empire in Mexico.—Maximilian is captured and shot.—Final success of the Atlantic telegraph.—The Postal Money-Order system is established.—The Territories assume their final form.—Alaska is purchased from Russia.—The difficulty between the President and Congress.—The reconstruction imbroglio.—Second amnesty.—The Civil Rights Bill is passed.—The Southern States are re-admitted.—A national convention at Philadelphia.—The President makes a tour of the country.—Congressional measures of reconstruction.—The breach is widened between the executive and Congress.—The vetoing business.—The President removes Stanton.—Is impeached.—And acquitted.—General Grant is elected President. 544-551.

CHAPTER LXVIII.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of President Grant.—The Pacific Railroad is completed.—The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments to the Constitution are adopted.—The story of Black Friday.—The Southern States are restored to their place in the Union.—The ninth census and its lesson.—The Santo Domingo business.—The Alabama claims are adjusted by the treaty of Washington and the Geneva court.—Railroad development of the United States.—The burning of Chicago.—The North-western boundary is settled by arbitration.—The presidential election.—The candidates.—Grant is re-elected.—Character of Greeley.—His death.—Great fire in Boston.—The Modoc war.—Murder of the peace commissioners.—The savages are subdued.—The Louisiana imbroglio.—The Credit Mobilier investigation.—The financial crisis of 1873-'74.—The Northern Pacific Railroad enterprise.—Admission of Colorado.—Death-roll of eminent men.—Sketches of Sumner and Wilson.—The great Centennial.—Origination of the enterprise.—Opposition.—General plan of the Exposition.—Organization.—The monetary management.—Lukewarmness of the Government.—The Centennial Grounds.—Dedication.—The General Regulations.—Nations participating.—Classification of products.—The Centennial Buildings.—Descriptions of the same.—Main Building.—Memorial Hall.—Machinery Hall.—Agricultural Hall.—Horticultural Hall.—United States Government Building.—Woman's Pavilion.—Foreign and State Buildings.—Reception of materials.—Scheme of Awards.—Opening ceremonies.—The Exposition itself.—Description of exhibits in Main Building.—In Machinery Hall.—In the Gov-

CONTENTS.

xxxiii

ernment Building.—In Agricultural Hall.—In Horticultural Hall.—In the Woman's Pavilion.—In Memorial Hall.—The celebration of the Fourth of July in Philadelphia.—Attendance at the Exposition.—The closing ceremonies.—The Sioux War.—The great election of 1876.—A disputed presidency.—The result. . . 552-633

CHAPTER LXIX.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of President Hayes.—His inaugural address.—The policy indicated.—Effect of the same upon the country.—The new cabinet is organized.—The great Railroad Strike breaks out.—And is suppressed.—Beginning of the Nez Perce War.—The tribe is subdued by General Howard.—Silver is remonetized.—The Yellow Fever epidemic in the South.—The Halifax Fishery Commission.—How constituted.—The award.—A Chinese Embassy established in the United States.—A Life Saving Service is instituted by Congress.—Resumption of Specie Payments by the Government.—Issues of 1880.—Garfield elected President.—Refunding legislation.—Tour of Ex-President Grant.—Results of the Census of 1880.—Death of Senator Morton, William Cullen Bryant, Bayard Taylor, and Senators Chandler and Carpenter. 633-646

CHAPTER LXX.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD AND ARTHUR.

Sketch of President Garfield.—His inaugural.—The new cabinet.—Question of Civil Service Reform.—Break in the Republican Party.—Assassination of the President.—Accession of Arthur.—Sketch of the new executive.—Cabinet changes.—Star-Route conspiracy.—Applications of science.—The telephone.—The phonograph.—The electric light.—The Brooklyn bridge.—Party questions of 1884.—The tariff issue.—Doctrine of free-trade.—Incidental protection.—Limited protection.—High protection.—Prohibitory tariffs.—Presidential contest of 1884.—Election of Cleveland and Hendricks.—Transfer of the command of the army.—The Washington Monument. 647-671

CHAPTER LXXI.

CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of President Cleveland.—The new cabinet.—Question of Civil Service Reform.—Struggle for office.—Revival of War memories.—Literature on the subject.—Death of General Grant.—Of General McClellan.—Of General Hancock.—Of General Logan.—Of Vice-President Hendricks.—Of Horatio Seymour.—Of Samuel J. Tilden.—Of Henry Ward Beecher.—Of Chief-Justice Waite.—Historical sketch of the Supreme Court.—Appointment of Melville W. Fuller.—Death of Roscoe Conkling.—His life and character.—The labor agitations and strikes of 1886-88.—The Hay-market riot in Chicago.—The Charleston earthquake.—The Forty-ninth Congress.—Question of extending the Pension list.—The Interstate Commerce Bill.—Political excitements of 1888.—Questions at issue.—Protection to American Industry.—Attitude of the Parties.—Nominations for the Presidency.—The result.—Admission of South and North Dakota, Montana, and Washington.—Institution of the Department of Agriculture. 672-696

CHAPTER LXXII.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Sketch of President Harrison.—His cabinet.—Centenary of the American Government.—Crises of the Revolutionary Epoch.—Declaration of Independence.—Formation of the Constitution.—Its adoption.—Institution of the Government in 1789.—Sketch of the ceremonies of Washington's Inauguration.—His journey to New York.—His reception.—Character of New York in 1789.—Inaugural programme prepared by Congress.—The Washingtonian procession.—The Inauguration proper.—First policy of the Government.—The Centennial commemoration of 1889.—Preparations for the event.—The throng in New York.—Coming of President Harrison and his company.—Decoration of the city.—Receptions of the Presidential Party, Literary Exercises.—Whittier's Poem and Depew's oration.—The Military Parade.—Features of the great Procession.—Sketch of the various divisions.—Metropolitan Banquets.—The Civic parade.—Its historical features.—Management of the throngs.—Difficulty with Germany relative to Samoa.—Causes of the controversy.—Wreck of the American and German fleets.—The Embassy to Berlin.—Meeting of Pan-American Congress.—Representatives thereto.—Subjects discussed and results.—Work of the International Maritime Conference.—Résumé of discussions and Acts of the Fifty-first Congress.—The McKinley Bill.—New rules for the government of the House. The Elections Bill.—Movement for the free coinage of silver.—Questions connected therewith.—Statehood for Idaho and Wyoming.—Census of 1890.—Deaths of Sheridan, Sherman and Johnston.—The Italian embroglio at New Orleans.—Serious complication with Italy.—Difficulty between the United States and Chili.—Affair of the Itata.—Overthrow of Balma-ceda.—The mob in Valparaiso.—Threatenings of war.—Settlement of the difficulty. Behring Sea controversy with Great Britain.—Commission appointed to arbitrate meet at Paris, France.—Question of restoring American influence on high seas.—Great war-ships constructed.—Methods of reducing surplus in Treasury.—Expenses of Government increased to more than a billion dollars.—Danger of National deficit.—James G. Blaine resigns his office as Secretary of State.—Nominations for Presidency.—Result.—Democratic control of Senate and House of Representatives for ensuing quadrennium.—Death of James G. Blaine. 696-750

CHAPTER LXXIII.

SECOND ADMINISTRATION OF CLEVELAND.

Re-election of President Cleveland.—His Cabinet.—World's Columbian Exposition.—Officers and Commissioners for same.—Appropriations of nations of the world.—Contest for location.—Energy of citizens of Chicago.—Ground broken and work continued night and day until completion.—Dedication.—Great procession.—Distinguished gathering of eminent men.—Opening of Exposition May 1, 1893.—Principal Buildings.—Administration Building.—Transportation Building.—Agricultural Building.—Horticultural Building.—Manufactures and Liberal Arts Building.—Fisheries Building.—Machinery Hall.—Woman's Building.—Electricity Building.—Mines and Mining Building.—United States Government Building.—Buildings of Foreign Governments.—Wooded Island.—Peristyle.—State Buildings.—Midway Plaisance.—Ferris Wheel.—Closing of Exposition.—Assassination of Mayor of Chicago.—Conclusion. 751-798

CHAPTER LXXIV.

CONCLUSION.

The outlook for the Republic.—Byron's view of nations.—The hopeful side.—Present achievements of the United States.—Natural advantages.—How the Saxon has improved them.—Things necessary to the perpetuity of American institutions: *First*, National Unity.—*Second*, Universal Education.—*Third*, Toleration.—*Fourth*, The Nobility of Labor.—Reflections. . . . 794–797

APPENDIXES.

APPENDIX A.—Mandeville's Argument	798
APPENDIX B.—Franklin's Constitution	802
APPENDIX C.—Declaration of Independence	804
APPENDIX D.—Articles of Confederation	807
APPENDIX E.—Constitution of the United States	813
APPENDIX F.—Washington's Farewell Address	824
APPENDIX G.—The Emancipation Proclamation	834
VOCABULARY	836
CENSUS	839
INDEX	847

ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Front view of the Capitol.....	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
Map of Aboriginal America.....	44
Diagram of European Kinship.....	45
Diagram of Indian Kinship.....	46
Specimen of Indian Writing.....	48
A North American Indian.....	49
Norse Explorations.....	52
A Norse Sea King of the 11th Century.....	53
Christopher Columbus.....	55
Chart of Voyage and Discovery.....	56
The Night of October 11, 1492.....	56
Fernando Cortez.....	59
Burial of De Soto.....	66
Dining Hall of the French Colonists at Port Royal.....	73
Map of Voyage of Discovery.....	76
Baptism of Virginia Dare.....	83
Map of English Grants.....	86
The Mayflower at Sea.....	90
Captain John Smith.....	96
John Smith Among the Indians.....	99
Jamestown and Vicinity.....	103
Wives for the Settlers at Jamestown.....	111
Governor Berkeley and the Insurgents.....	120
Chart of the Colonial Period.....	122
The Treaty between Governor Carver and Massasoit.....	124
John Winthrop.....	127
Roger Williams's Reception by the Indians.....	129
Early Settlements in New England.....	131
First Scene of King Philip's War.....	140
Second Scene of King Philip's War.....	141
Third Scene of King Philip's War.....	143
Death of King Philip.....	144
Siege of Louisburg, 1745.....	158
Sir Henry Hudson.....	161
De Vries Revisits his Ruined Settlement.....	164
French, English, Dutch, Swedish, and Spanish Provinces, 1655.....	168
Peter Stuyvesant.....	171
Roger Williams Opposing the Pequot Emissaries.....	185
Scene of the Pequod War.....	187
The Younger Winthrop.....	190
The Old Stone Tower at Newport.....	195
East and West Jersey, 1677.....	205

	PAGE
Penn's Colonists on the Delaware.....	209
William Penn.....	211
Philadelphia and Vicinity.....	213
Lord Baltimore.....	217
James Oglethorpe.....	239
Country of the Savannah, 1740.....	242
Scene in St. Augustine.....	242
Marquette and Joliet Discover the Mississippi.....	247
First Scene of the French and Indian War, 1750.....	253
Scene of Braddock's Defeat, 1755.....	260
Fall of Braddock.....	260
The Acadian Isthmus, 1755.....	262
The Exile of the Acadians.....	263
Vicinity of Lake George, 1755.....	265
Vicinity of Quebec, 1759.....	274
General James Wolfe.....	275
The Revelation of Pontiac's Conspiracy.....	278
The Old Thirteen Colonies.....	281
Patrick Henry.....	290
Samuel Adams.....	295
Scene of the Battle of Bunker Hill, 1775.....	300
Siege of Boston, 1776.....	306
Chart of the Revolution and Confederation.....	306
Battle of Long Island, 1776.....	311
Scene of Operations about New York, 1776.....	314
Battles of Trenton and Princeton, 1776-77.....	316
Scene of Burgoyne's Invasion, 1777.....	323
Encampment at Valley Forge, 1777-78.....	327
Benjamin Franklin.....	330
Siege of Charleston, 1780.....	340
Scene of Operations in the South, 1780-81.....	342
Scene of Arnold's Treason, 1780.....	344
General Greene.....	351
Siege of Yorktown, October, 1781.....	353
Map of the United States at the Close of the Revolution.....	354
Alexander Hamilton.....	359
George Washington.....	363
Chart of the National Period—First Section.....	364
John Adams.....	372
Thomas Jefferson.....	377
Inauguration of the Territorial Government at Marietta, Ohio.....	378
Chief-Justice Marshall.....	380
Robert Fulton.....	386
James Madison.....	389
Scene of Hull's Campaign, 1812.....	394
The Niagara Frontier, 1812.....	399
Scene of the Creek War, 1813-14.....	403
La Fayette.....	423
Chart of the National Period—Second Section.....	424
Andrew Jackson.....	427
Daniel Webster.....	429

ILLUSTRATIONS.

xxxix

	PAGE
Land of the Seminoles.....	431
The New Patent-Office at Washington.....	433
Bunker Hill Monument.....	443
Professor Morse.....	446
Texas and Coahuila, 1845.....	446
Scene of Taylor's Campaign, 1846-47.....	449
Fremont on the Rocky Mountains.....	452
Scene of Scott's Campaign, 1847.....	454
General Winfield Scott.....	457
The Smithsonian Institution.....	460
Overland to California, 1849. (Pass of the Sierras).....	460
President Taylor.....	463
Henry Clay.....	465
John C. Calhoun.....	468
General Sam Houston.....	477
Washington Irving.....	478
Alexander H. Stephens.....	481
Abraham Lincoln.....	483
Chart of the National Period—Third Section.....	489
Scene of Operations in West Virginia, 1861.....	490
Vicinity of Manassas Junction, 1861.....	491
Jefferson Davis.....	492
Scene of Operations in the South-west, 1861.....	493
William H. Seward.....	495
Battle of Murfreesborough, December 31, 1862.....	500
Battle of Murfreesborough, January 2, 1863.....	501
Scene of Campaign in Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania, 1862.....	503
General Robert E. Lee.....	504
Vicinity of Richmond, 1862.....	505
The Battle of Antietam, September 17, 1862.....	507
The Proposed Routes from Washington to Richmond, 1862.....	508
Vicksburg and Vicinity, 1863.....	512
Battle of Chickamauga, September 19, 20, 1863.....	514
Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, November 23-25, 1863.....	515
Stonewall Jackson.....	519
Battle of Gettysburg, July 1-3, 1863.....	520
Sherman's Campaign, 1864.....	525
General Thomas.....	527
General Sherman.....	528
Admiral Farragut.....	631
Operations in Virginia, 1864-65.....	535
Petersburg, Richmond, Appomattox, 1865.....	539
Map of the United States, 1876.....	546
Chief-Justice Chase.....	551
President Grant.....	552
Map of the Territorial Growth of the United States.....	556
Horace Greeley.....	558
Charles Sumner.....	562
Independence Hall, 1876.....	563
General Joseph R. Hawley.....	566
Centennial Medal—Obverse.....	567

	PAGE
Centennial Medal—Reverse.....	567
The Centennial Grounds and Buildings.....	569
Main Exposition Building, Centennial Exhibition.....	576
Memorial Hall, “ “.....	579
Machinery Hall, “ “.....	581
Agricultural Hall, “ “.....	583
Horticultural Hall, “ “.....	585
U. S. Government Building, “ “.....	587
Woman's Pavilion, “ “.....	589
Inaugural Ceremonies of the Centennial Exhibition.....	593
Alfred T. Goshorn.....	595
View in the Main Exhibition Building.....	597
Interior View of Machinery Hall.....	607
Interior View of the United States Government Building.....	613
Interior View of Agricultural Hall.....	616
Interior View of Horticultural Hall.....	621
Rotunda of Memorial Hall.....	623
Scene of the Sioux War, 1876.....	629
Sioux Indians in Battle with Emigrants.....	629
Rutherford B. Hayes.....	633
James A. Garfield.....	647
Chester A. Arthur.....	652
The Telephone.....	655
Brooklyn Bridge.....	661
Philip H. Sheridan.....	671
Grover Cleveland.....	672
Thomas F. Bayard.....	673
Thomas A. Hendricks.....	674
George B. McClellan.....	674
Ambrose E. Burnside.....	675
Joseph Hooker.....	675
Winfield Scott Hancock.....	676
George G. Meade.....	677
John A. Logan.....	679
Samuel J. Tilden.....	680
Henry Ward Beecher.....	681
Morrison R. Waite.....	682
Roscoe Conkling.....	685
Benjamin Harrison.....	696
James G. Blaine.....	697
Old Federal Hall, 1789.....	702
Inauguration of Washington.....	707
Old St. Paul's Chapel.....	709
Sub-Treasury Building in Wall Street.....	714
John M. Schofield.....	718
Memorial Arch in Washington Square.....	719
Administration Building.....	765
Agricultural Building.....	767
Horticultural Building.....	768
Manufactures and Liberal Arts Building.....	770
Fish and Fisheries Building.....	771

ILLUSTRATIONS.

xli

	PAGE
Machinery Hall.....	772
Woman's Building.....	773
Electricity Building.....	774
Mines and Mining Building.....	775
Palace of Fine Arts.....	776
United States Government Building.....	778
Battle-ship.....	779
Illinois Building.....	insert after 784
Maine Building.....	" " 784
New Hampshire Building.....	" " 784
Vermont Building.....	" " 784
Rhode Island Building.....	" " 784
Connecticut Building.....	" " 784
New York Building.....	" " 784
Pennsylvania Building.....	" " 784
Liberty Bell.....	786
New Jersey Building.....	insert after 786
Delaware Building.....	" " 786
Massachusetts Building.....	" " 786
Virginia Building.....	" " 786
West Virginia Building.....	" " 786
Maryland Building.....	" " 786
Florida Building.....	" " 786
Louisiana Building.....	" " 786
Texas Building.....	" " 788
Kentucky Building.....	" " 788
Missouri Building.....	" " 788
Joint Territorial Building.....	" " 788
Ohio Building.....	" " 788
Indiana Building.....	" " 788
Michigan Building.....	" " 788
Wisconsin Building.....	" " 788
Minnesota Building.....	" " 790
Iowa Building.....	" " 790
Kansas Building.....	" " 790
Nebraska Building.....	" " 790
Montana Building.....	" " 790
Colorado Building.....	" " 790
Idaho Building.....	" " 790
Washington Building.....	" " 790
North Dakota Building.....	" " 792
South Dakota Building.....	" " 792
Utah Building.....	" " 792
California Building.....	" " 792

INTRODUCTION.

1. THE history of every nation is divided into periods. For a while the genius of a people will be turned to some particular pursuit. Men will devote themselves to certain things and labor to accomplish certain results. Then the spirit of the age will change, and historical facts will assume a different character. Thus arises what is called A PERIOD IN HISTORY. In studying the history of the United States it is of the first importance to understand the periods into which it is divided.

2. First of all, there was a time when the New World was under the dominion of the aborigines. From ocean to ocean the copper-colored children of the woods ruled with undisputed sway. By bow and arrow, by flint and hatchet, the Red man supported his rude civilization and waited for the coming of the pale-faced races.

3. After the discovery of America, the people of Europe were hundreds of years in making themselves acquainted with the shape and character of the New World. During that time explorers and adventurers went everywhere and settled nowhere. To make new discoveries was the universal passion; but nobody cared to plant a colony. As long as this spirit prevailed, historical events bore a common character, being produced by common causes. Hence arose the second period in our history—the Period of Voyage and Discovery.

4. As soon as the adventurers had satisfied themselves with tracing sea-coasts, ascending rivers and scaling mountains, they began to form permanent settlements. And each settlement was a new State in the wilderness. Every voyager now became ambitious to plant a colony. Kings and queens grew anxious to confer their names on the towns and commonwealths of the New World. Thus arose a third period—the Period of Colonial History.

5. Then the colonies grew strong and multiplied. There were thirteen little sea-shore republics. The people began to consult about their privileges and to talk of the rights of freemen. Oppression on the part of the mother-country was met with resistance, and tyranny with defiance. There was a revolt against the king; and the patriots of the different colonies fought side by side, and won their freedom. Then they built them a Union, strong and great. This is the Period of Revolution and Confederation.

6. Then the United States of America entered upon their career as a nation. Three times tried by war and many times vexed with civil dissensions, the Union of our fathers still remains for us and for posterity. Such is the Period of Nationality.

7. Collecting these results, we find five distinctly marked periods in the history of our country:

First. THE ABORIGINAL PERIOD; from remote antiquity to the coming of the White men.

Second. THE PERIOD OF VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY; A. D. 986-1607.

Third. THE COLONIAL PERIOD; A. D. 1607-1775.

Fourth. THE PERIOD OF REVOLUTION AND CONFEDERATION; A. D. 1775-1789.

Fifth. THE NATIONAL PERIOD; A.D. 1789 to present decade.

In this order the History of the United States will be presented in the following pages.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

ABORIGINAL AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

THE RED MEN—ORIGIN, DISTRIBUTION, CHARACTER.

THE primitive inhabitants of the New World were the Red men called INDIANS. The name *Indian* was conferred upon them from their real or fancied resemblance to the people of India. But without any such similarity the name would have been the same; for Columbus and his followers, believing that they had only rediscovered the Indies, would of course call the inhabitants Indians. The supposed similarity between the two races, if limited to mere personal appearance, had some foundation in fact; but in manners, customs, institutions, and character, no two peoples could be more dissimilar than the American aborigines and the sleepy inhabitants of China and Japan.

The origin of the North American Indians is involved in complete obscurity. That they are one of the older races of mankind can not be doubted. But at what date or by what route they came to the Western continent is an unsolved problem. Many theories have been proposed to account for the Red man's presence in the New World, but most of them have been vague and unsatisfactory. The notion that the Indians are the descendants of the Israelites is absurd. That half civilized tribes, wandering from beyond the Euphrates, should reach North America, surpasses human credulity. That Europeans or Africans, at some remote period, crossed the Atlantic by voyaging from island to island, seems altogether improbable. That the Kamtchatkans, coming by way of Behring's Strait, reached the frozen North-west and

became the progenitors of the Red men, has no evidence other than conjecture to support it. Until further research shall throw additional light on the history and migrations of the primitive races of mankind, the origin of the Indians will remain shrouded in mystery. It is not unlikely that a more thorough knowledge of the North American languages may furnish a clue to the early history of the tribes that spoke them.

The Indians belong to the *Ganowanian*, or Bow-and-Arrow family of men. Some races cultivate the soil; others have herds and flocks; others build cities and ships. To the Red man of the Western continent the chase was every thing. Without the chase he pined and languished and died. To smite with swift arrow the deer and the bear was the chief delight and profit of the primitive Americans. Such a race could live only in a country of woods and wild animals. The illimitable hunting-grounds—forest, and hill, and river—were the Indian's earthly paradise, and the type of his home hereafter.

The American aborigines belonged to several distinct families or nations. Above the sixtieth parallel of latitude the whole continent from Labrador to Alaska was inhabited by THE ESQUIMAUX. The name means *the eaters of raw meat*. They lived in snow huts, or in hovels, partly or wholly underground. Sometimes their houses were more artistically constructed out of the bones of whales and walruses. Their manner of life was that of fishermen and hunters. They clad themselves in winter with the skins of seals, and in summer with those of reindeers. Inured to cold and exposure, they made long journeys in sledges drawn by dogs, or risked their lives in open boats fighting with whales and polar bears among the terrors of the icebergs. By eating abundantly of oils and fat meats they kept the fires of life a-burning, even amid the rigors and desolations of the Arctic winter.

Lying south of the Esquimaux, embracing the greater part of Canada and nearly all that portion of the United States east of the Mississippi and north of the thirty-seventh parallel of latitude, spread the great family of THE ALGONQUINS. It appears that their original seat was on the Ottawa River. At the beginning of the seventeenth century the Algonquins numbered fully a quarter of a million. The tribes of this great family were nomadic in their habits, roaming from one hunting-ground and river to another, according to the exigencies of fishing and the chase. Agriculture was but little esteemed. They were divided into many subordinate tribes, each having its local name, dialect, and traditions. When the first European settlements were planted the Algonquin race was already declining in numbers

and influence. Wasting diseases destroyed whole tribes. Of all the Indian nations the Algonquins suffered most from contact with the White man. Before his aggressive spirit, his fiery rum, and his destructive weapons, the warriors were unable to stand. The race has withered to a shadow; only a few thousands remain to rehearse the story of their ancestors.

Within the wide territory occupied by the Algonquins lived the powerful nation of THE HURON-IROQUOIS. Their domain extended over the country reaching from Georgian Bay and Lake Huron to Lakes Erie and Ontario, south of those lakes to the valley of the Upper Ohio, and eastward to the River Sorel. Within this extensive district was a confederacy of vigorous tribes, having a common ancestry, and generally—though not always—acting together in war. At the time of their greatest power and influence the Huron-Iroquois embraced no less than nine allied nations. These were the Hurons proper, living north of Lake Erie; the Eries and Andastes, south of the same water; the Tuscaroras, of Carolina, who ultimately joined their kinsmen in the North; the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas, and Mohawks, constituting the famous Five Nations of New York. The warriors of this great confederation presented the Indian character in its most favorable aspect. They were brave, patriotic, and eloquent; not wholly averse to useful industry; living in respectable villages; tilling the soil with considerable success; faithful as friends but terrible as enemies.

South of the country of the Algonquins were THE CHEROKEES and THE MOBILIAN NATIONS; the former occupying Tennessee, and the latter covering the domain between the Lower Mississippi and the Atlantic. The Cherokees were highly civilized for a primitive people, and contact with the whites seemed to improve rather than degrade them. The principal tribes of the Mobilians were the Yamassees and Creeks of Georgia, the Seminoles of Florida, and the Choctaws and Chickasaws of Mississippi. These displayed the usual characteristics of the Red men, with this additional circumstance, that below the thirty-second parallel of latitude evidences of temple-building, not practiced among the Northern tribes, began to appear.

West of the Father of Waters was the great and widely-spread race of THE DAKOTAS, whose territory extended from the Arkansas River to the country of the Esquimaux and westward to the Rocky Mountains. Their languages and institutions, differing much among the various tribes, are not so well understood as those of some other nations. South of the land of the Dakotas, in a district nearly cor-

responding with the present State of Texas, lived the wild COMANCHES, whose very name is a synonym for savage ferocity. Beyond the Rocky Mountains were the Indian nations of the Plains; the great family of THE SHOSHONEES, THE SELISH, THE KLAMATHS, and THE CALIFORNIANS. On the Pacific slope farther southward dwelt in former times the famous races of AZTECS and TOLTECS. These were the most civilized of the primitive Indian nations, but at the same time among the most feeble; the best builders in wood and stone, but the least warlike of any of the aborigines. Such is a brief sketch of the distribution of the copper-colored race in the New World. The territorial position of the various nations and tribes will be easily understood from an examination of the accompanying map.

The Indians were strongly marked with national peculiarities. The most striking characteristic of the race was *a certain sense of personal independence—willfulness of action—freedom from restraint*. To the Red man's imagination the idea of a civil authority which should subordinate his passions, curb his will, and thwart his purposes, was intolerable. Among this people no common enterprise was possible unless made so by the concurrence of free wills. If the chieftain entered the war-path, his kinsmen and the braves of other tribes followed him only because they chose his leadership. His authority and right of command extended no further than to be foremost in danger, most cunning in savage strategy, bravest in battle. So of all the relations of Indian life. The Medicine Man was a self-constituted physician and prophet. No man gave him his authority; no man took it away. His right was his own; and his influence depended upon himself and the voluntary respect of the nation. In the solemn debates of the Council House, where the red orators pronounced their wild harangues to groups of motionless listeners, only questions of expediency were decided. The painted sachems never thought of imposing on the unwilling minority the decision which had been reached in council.

Next among the propensities of the Red men was *the passion for war*. Their wars, however, were always undertaken for the redress of grievances, real or imaginary, and not for conquest. But with the Indian, a redress of grievances meant a personal, vindictive, and bloody vengeance on the offender. The Indian's principles of war were easily understood. He fought with justice and humanity. The forgiveness of an enemy was a weakness and a shame. Revenge was his duty. The Indian was open, honorable.

warfare. Fighting was limited to the surprise, the ambuscade, the massacre; and military strategy consisted of cunning and treachery. Quarter was rarely asked, and never granted; those who were spared from the fight were only reserved for a barbarous captivity, ransom, or the stake. In the torture of his victims all the diabolical ferocity of the savage warrior's nature burst forth without restraint.

In times of peace the Indian character shone to a better advantage. But the Red man was, at his best estate, an unsocial, solitary, and gloomy spirit.

He was a man of the woods. He communed only with himself and the genius of solitude. He sat apart. The forest was better than his wigwam, and his wigwam better than the village. The Indian woman was a degraded creature, a drudge, a beast of burden; and the social principle was correspondingly low. The organization of the Indian family was so peculiar

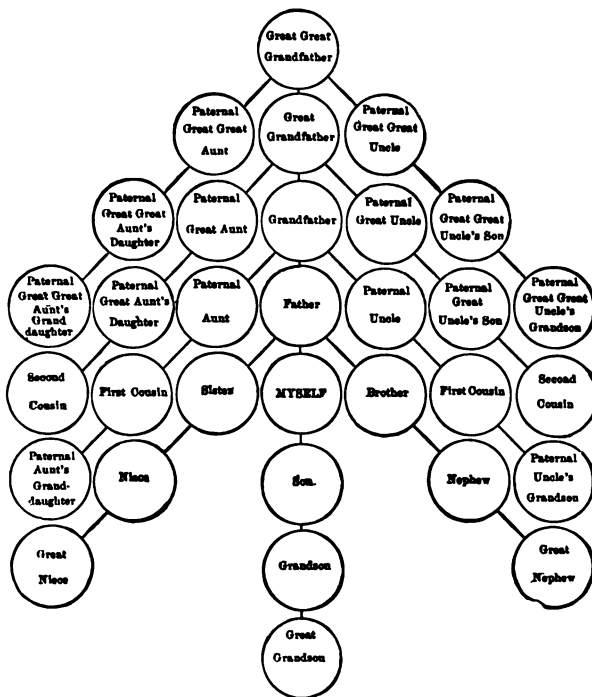


DIAGRAM OF EUROPEAN KINSHIP.

as to require a special consideration. Among civilized nations the family is so constructed that the lines of kinship diverge constantly from the line of descent, so that collateral kinsmen with each generation stand at a still greater remove from each other. The above diagram will serve to show how in a European family the lines of consanguinity diverge until the kinship becomes so feeble as to be no longer recognized. It will be observed that this fact of constant divergence is traceable to the establishment of a *male line of descent*.

In the Indian family all this is reversed. The descent is established in the *female line*; and as a consequence the ties of kinship

converge upon each other until they all meet in the granddaughter. That is, in the aboriginal nations of North America, every grandson and granddaughter was the grandson and granddaughter of the whole tribe. This arose from the fact that all the uncles of a given person were reckoned as his fathers also; all the mother's sisters were mothers; all the cousins were sisters and brothers; all the nieces were daughters; all the nephews, sons, etc. This peculiarity of the Indian family organization is illustrated in the annexed diagram.

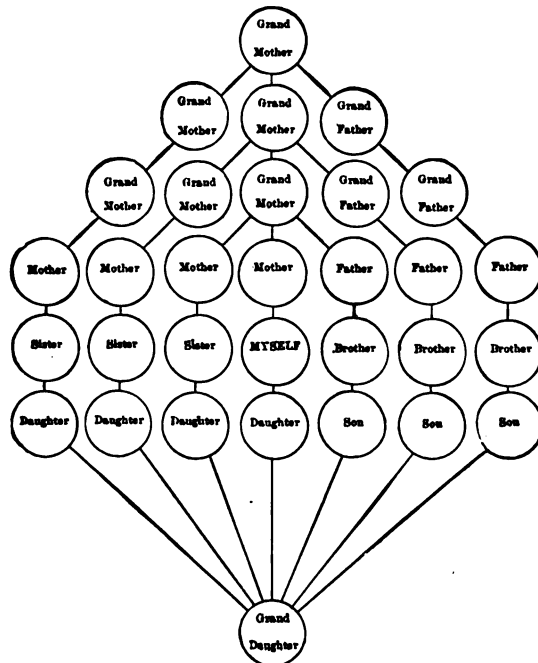


DIAGRAM OF INDIAN KINSHIP.

composed them. Sometimes a sachem would arise with such marked abilities, warlike prowess, and strength of will, as to gain an influence, if not a positive leadership over many nations. But with the death of the chieftain, or sooner, each tribe, resuming its independence, would return to its own ways. No general Indian Congress was known; but national and tribal councils were frequently called to debate questions of policy and right.

In matters of religion the Indians were a superstitious race, but seldom idolaters. They believed in a great spirit, everywhere present, ruling the elements, showing favor to the obedient, and punishing the sinful. Him they worshiped; to him they sacrificed. But not in tem-

Civil government among the Indian nations was in its primitive stages of development. Each tribe had its own sachem, or chieftain, to whom in matters of peace and war a tolerable degree of obedience was rendered. At times confederations were formed, based either on ties of kinship or the exigencies of war. But these confederations were seldom enduring, and were likely at any time to be broken up by the barbarous passion and insubordination of the tribes who

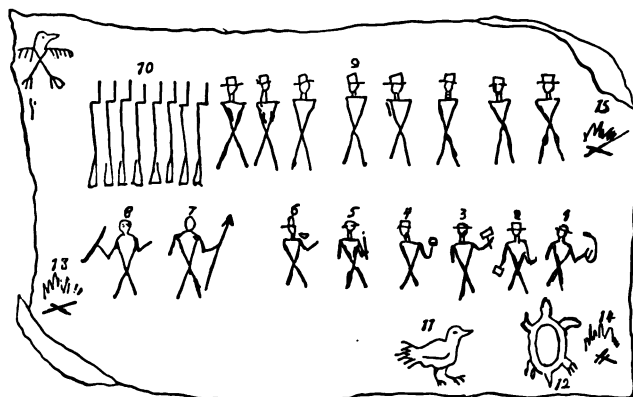
ples, nor the Indians built none. They also believed in many subordinate spirits—some good, some bad. Both classes frequented the earth. The bad spirits brought evil dreams to the Indian; diseases also, bad passions, cruel winters, and starvation. The good spirits brought sunshine, peace, plentiful harvests, all the creatures of the chase. The Medicine Man, or Prophet, obtained a knowledge of these things by fasting and prayer, and then made revelations of the will and purposes of the spirit world. The religious ceremonies of the Indians were performed with great earnestness and solemn formality.

In the matter of the arts the Indian was a barbarian. His house was a wigwam or hovel. Some poles set up in a circle, converging at the top, covered with skins and the branches of trees, lined and sometimes floored with mats, a fire in the center, a low opening opposite the point from which the wind blew—such was the aboriginal abode of North America. Indian utensils were few, rude, and primitive. Poorly-fashioned earthen pots, bags and pouches for carrying provisions, and stone hammers for pounding parched corn, were the stock and store. A copper kettle was a priceless treasure. The warrior's chief implement was his hatchet of stone or copper. This he always carried with him, and it was rarely free from the stain of blood. His weapon of offence and defence was the bow and arrow, by no means an insignificant or feeble instrument. The arrow pointed with stone or iron was frequently driven *entirely through* the ponderous buffalo. The range of the winged missile was two hundred yards or more, and the aim was one of fatal accuracy when the White man was the target. The Indian's clothing was a blanket, thrown over his shoulders, bound around him perhaps with a thong of leather. The material for his moccasins* and leggins was stripped from the red buck, elk, or buffalo. He was fond of hanging about his person an infinity of nonsensical trappings; fangs of rattlesnakes, claws of hawks, feathers of eagles, bones of animals, scalps of enemies. He painted his face and body, specially when the passion of war was on him, with all manner of glaring and fantastic colors. So the Prophet of his nation taught him; so he would be terrible to his enemies; so he would exemplify the peculiarities of his nation and be unlike the Pale face. All the higher arts were wanting. Indian writing consisted only of quaint and half-intelligible hieroglyphics rudely scratched on the face of rocks or cut in the bark of trees. The artistic sense of the savage could rise no higher than a coarse necessity compelled the flight.

The language spoken by a people is always a matter of special

* The Algonquin word is *mashin*.

interest and importance. The dialects of the North American races bear many and evident marks of resemblance *among themselves*; but little or no analogy to the languages of *other nations*. If there is any similarity at all, it is found between the Indian tongues and those



SPECIMEN OF INDIAN WRITING.

Translation: Eight soldiers (8), with muskets (10), commanded by a captain (1), and accompanied by a secretary (2), a geologist (3), three attendants (4, 5, 6), and two Indian guides, encamped here. They had three camp fires (13, 14, 15), and ate a turtle and a prairie hen (11, 12), for supper.

spoken by the nomadic races of Asia. The vocabulary of the Red men was a very limited one. The principal objects of nature had special names, and actions were likewise specifically expressed. Abstract ideas but rarely found expression in

any of the Indian languages; such ideas could only be expressed by a long and labored circumlocution. Words had a narrow but very intense meaning. There was, for instance, no general word signifying *to hunt* or *to fish*; but one word signified "to-kill-a-deer-with-an-arrow;" another, "to-take-fish-by-striking-the-ice." In most of the dialects there was no word for *brother*; but "elder-brother" and "younger-brother" could be expressed. Among many of the tribes the meanings of words and phrases were so restricted that the warrior would use one set of terms and the squaw another to express the same ideas. The languages were monosyllabic; but many of the monosyllables might be combined to form compounds resembling the polysyllables of European tongues. These compounds, expressing abstract and difficult ideas, were sometimes inordinately long,* the whole forming an *explanation* or *description* of the thing rather than a single word. Scholars have applied the term *agglutinative* to those languages in which such labored and tedious forms of expression occur. Of this sort are the tongues spoken by the nomadic races of Asia.

* For instance, in the Massachusetts dialect, the form of speech meaning "our question" was this: Kum-mog-ko-don-at-toot-tum-moo-et-it-e-a-ong-an-nun-non-ash.

In personal appearance the Indians were strongly marked. In stature they were nearly all below the average of Europeans. The Esquimaux are rarely five feet high, but are generally thick-set and heavy. The Algonquins are taller and lighter in build; a straight and agile race, lean and swift of foot. Eyes jet-black and sunken; hair black and straight; beard black and scant; skin copper-colored, a reddish-black, cinnamon-hued, brown; high cheek bones; forehead and skull variable in shape and proportion; hands and feet small; body lithe but not strong; expression sinister, or rarely dignified and noble:—these are the well-known features and person of the Indian.



A NORTH AMERICAN INDIAN.*

Though generally sedate in manners and serious in behavior, the Red men at times gave themselves up to merry-making and hilarity. The dance was universal—not the social dance of civilized nations, but the dance of ceremony, of religion, and of war. Sometimes the warriors danced alone, but frequently the women joined in the wild exercise, circling around and around, chanting the weird, monotonous songs of the tribes. Many other amusements were common, such as running, leaping, wrestling, shooting at a mark, racing in canoes along swift rivers or placid lakes, playing at ball, or engaging in intricate and exciting games, performed with small stones resembling checkers or dice. To this latter sport was not unfrequently added the intoxication of gambling, in which the warriors, under the influence of their fierce passion, would often hazard and

* An authentic portrait of the celebrated Black Hawk, chief of the Sacs and Foxes.

lose their entire possessions. In soberer moments, the Red men, never inclined to conversation, would sit in silence, communing each with his own thoughts or lost in a dream under the fascination of his pipe. The use of tobacco was universal and excessive; and after the introduction of intoxicating liquors by the Europeans the Indians fell into terrible drunkenness, only limited in its extent by the amount of spirits which they could procure. It is doubtful whether any other race has been so awfully degraded by drink.

Such is a brief sketch of the Red man—who *was* rather than *is*. The only hope of the perpetuity of his race seems now to center in the Choctaws, Cherokees, Creeks and Chickasaws of the Indian Territory. These nations, numbering in the aggregate about forty-eight thousand souls, have attained a considerable degree of civilization; and with just and liberal dealing on the part of the Government the outlook for the future is not discouraging. Most of the other Indian tribes seem to be rapidly approaching extinction. Right or wrong, such is the logic of events. Whether the Red man has been justly deprived of the ownership of the New World will remain a subject of debate; that he *has* been deprived, can be none. The Saxon has come. His conquering foot has trodden the vast domain from shore to shore. The weaker race has withered from his presence and sword. By the majestic rivers and in the depths of the solitary woods the feeble sons of the Bow and Arrow will be seen no more. Only their names remain on hill and stream and mountain. The Red man sinks and fails. His eyes are to the West. To the prairies and forests, the hunting-grounds of his ancestors, he says farewell. He is gone! The cypress and the hemlock sing his requiem.

PART II.

VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.

A. D. 986—1607.

CHAPTER II.

THE ICELANDERS AND NORWEGIANS IN AMERICA.

THE western continent was first seen by white men in A. D. 986. A Norse navigator by the name of HERJULFSON, sailing from Iceland to Greenland, was caught in a storm and driven westward to Newfoundland or Labrador. Two or three times the shores were seen, but no landing was made or attempted. The coast was low, abounding in forests, and so different from the well-known cliffs of Greenland as to make it certain that another shore hitherto unknown was in sight. On reaching Greenland, Herjulfson and his companions told wonderful stories of the new lands seen in the west.

Fourteen years later, the actual discovery of America was made by LIEF ERICKSON. This noted Icelandic captain, resolving to know the truth about the country which Herjulfson had seen, sailed westward from Greenland, and in the spring of the year 1001 reached Labrador. Impelled by a spirit of adventure, he landed with his companions, and made explorations for a considerable distance along the coast. The country was milder and more attractive than his own, and he was in no haste to return. Southward he went as far as Massachusetts, where the daring company of Norsemen remained for more than a year. Rhode Island was also visited; and it is alleged that the hardy adventurers found their way into New York harbor.

What has once been done, whether by accident or design, may easily be done again. In the years that followed Lief Erickson's discovery, other companies of Norsemen came to the shores of America. THORWALD, Lief's brother, made a voyage to Maine and Massachusetts in 1002, and is said to have died at Fall River in the latter state.

Then another brother, THORSTEIN by name, arrived with a band of followers in 1005; and in the year 1007, THORFINN KARLSEFNE, the most distinguished mariner of his day, came with a crew of a hundred and fifty men, and made explorations along the coast of Massachusetts,



NORSE EXPLORATIONS.

Rhode Island, and perhaps as far south as the capes of Virginia. Other companies of Icelanders and Norwegians visited the countries farther north, and planted colonies in Newfoundland and Nova Scotia. Little, however, was known or imagined by these rude sailors of the extent of the country which they had discovered. They supposed that it was only a portion of Western Greenland, which, bending to the north around an arm of the ocean, had reappeared in the west.

The settlements which were made, were feeble and soon broken up. Commerce was an impossibility in a country where there were only a few wretched savages with no disposition to buy and nothing at all to sell. The spirit of adventure was soon appeased, and the restless Northmen returned to their own country. To this undefined line of coast, now vaguely known to them, the Norse sailors gave the name of VINLAND; and the old Icelandic chroniclers insist that it was a pleasant and beautiful country. As compared with their own mountainous and frozen island of the North, the coasts of New England may well have seemed delightful.

The men who thus first visited the shores of the New World were a race of hardy adventurers, as lawless and restless as any that ever sailed the deep. Their mariners and soldiers penetrated every clime. The better parts of France and England fell under their dominion. All the monarchs of the latter country after William the Conqueror—himself the grandson of a sea-king—are descendants of

the Norsemen. They were rovers of the sea; freebooters and pirates; warriors audacious and headstrong, wearing hoods surmounted with eagles' wings and walruses' tusks, mailed armor, and for robes the skins of polar bears. Woe to the people on whose defenceless coasts the sea-kings landed with sword and torch! Their wayward life and ferocious disposition are well portrayed in one of their own old ballads:

He scorns to rest 'neath the smoky rafter,
He plows with his boat the roaring deep;
The billows boil and the storm howls after—
But the tempest is only a thing of laughter,—
The sea-king loves it better than sleep!

During the twelfth, thirteenth, and fourteenth centuries occasional voyages continued to be made; and it is said that as late as A. D. 1347 a Norwegian ship visited Labrador and the north-eastern parts of the United States. The Norse remains which have been found at Newport, at Garnet Point, and several other places seem to point clearly to some such events as are here described; and the Icelandic historians give a uniform and tolerably consistent account of these early exploits of their countrymen. When the word America is mentioned in the hearing of the Icelandic schoolboys, they will at once answer, with enthusiasm, "Oh, yes; Lief Erickson discovered that country in the year 1001."

An event is to be weighed by its consequences. From the discovery of America by the Norsemen, nothing whatever resulted. The world was neither wiser nor better. Among the Icelanders themselves the place and the very name of Vinland were forgotten. Europe never heard of such a country or such a discovery. Historians have until late years been incredulous on the subject, and the fact is as though it had never been. The curtain which had been lifted for a



A NORSE SEA-KING OF THE ELEVENTH CENTURY.

moment was stretched again from sky to sea, and the New World still lay hidden in the shadows.*

CHAPTER III.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES IN AMERICA.

IT was reserved for the people of a sunnier clime than Iceland first to make known to the European nations the existence of a Western continent. Spain was the happy country under whose auspicious patronage a new world was to be added to the old; but the man who was destined to make the revelation was not himself a Spaniard: he was to come from genial Italy, the land of olden valor and the home of so much greatness. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS was the name of that man whom after ages have justly rewarded with imperishable fame.

The idea that the world is round was not original with Columbus. Others before him had held a similar belief; but the opinion had been so feebly and uncertainly entertained as to lead to no practical results. Copernicus, the Prussian astronomer, had not yet taught, nor had Galileo, the great Italian, yet demonstrated, the true system of the universe. The English traveler, Sir John Mandeville, had declared in the very first English book that ever was written (A. D. 1356) that the world is a sphere; that he himself, when traveling northward, had seen the polar star approach the zenith, and that on going southward the antarctic constellations had risen overhead; and that it was both possible and practicable for a man to sail around the world and return to the place of starting: but neither Sir John himself nor any other seaman of his times was bold enough to undertake so hazardous an enterprise.† Columbus was, no doubt, the first *practical* believer in the theory of circumnavigation; and although he never sailed around the world himself, he demonstrated the possibility of doing so.

* As to the reality of the Norse discoveries in America, the following from Humboldt's *Cosmos*, Vol. II., pp. 269-272, may be cited as conclusive: "We are here on historical ground. By the critical and highly praiseworthy efforts of Professor Rafn and the Royal Society of Antiquaries in Copenhagen, the Sagas and documents in regard to the expeditions of the Norsemen to Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, and Vinland have been published and satisfactorily commented upon. * * * * *The discovery of the northern part of America by the Norsemen can not be disputed.* The length of the voyage, the direction in which they sailed, the time of the sun's rising and setting, are accurately given. While the Caliphate of Bagdad was still flourishing, * * * * America was discovered about the year A. D. 1000, by Lief, the son of Eric the Red, at the latitude of forty-one and a-half degrees north."

† See Appendix A.

The great mistake with Columbus and others who shared his opinions was not concerning the figure of the earth, but in regard to its size. He believed the world to be no more than ten thousand or twelve thousand miles in circumference. He therefore confidently expected that after sailing about three thousand miles to the westward he should arrive at the East Indies; and to do that was the one great purpose of his life.

Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa, a seacoast town of North-western Italy, in A.D. 1435. He was carefully educated, and then devoted



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

himself to the sea. His ancestors had been seamen before him. His own inclination as well as his early training made him a sailor. For twenty years he traversed the Mediterranean and the parts of the Atlantic adjacent to Europe; he visited Iceland; then went to Portugal, and finally to Spain. The idea of reaching the Indies by crossing the Atlantic had already possessed him. For more than ten years the poor enthusiast was a beggar, going from court


to court, explaining to dull monarchs and bigoted monks the figure of the earth and the ease with which the rich islands of the East might be reached by sailing westward. He found one appreciative listener, afterward his constant and faithful friend—the noble and sympathetic Isabella, queen of Castile. Be it never forgotten that to the faith, and insight, and decision of a woman the final success of Columbus must be attributed.

On the morning of the 3d day of August, 1492, Columbus, with his three ships, left the harbor of Palos. After seventy-one days of sailing, in the early dawn of October 12, Rodrigo Triana, who chanced to be on the lookout from the *Pinta*, set up a shout of "*Land!*" A gun was fired as the signal. The ships lay to. There was music and jubilee;

and just at sunrise Columbus himself first stepped ashore, shook out the royal banner of Castile in the presence of the wondering natives, and named the island San Salvador. During the three remaining months of this first voyage the islands of Concepcion, Cuba and Hayti were added to the list of discoveries; and on the bay of Caracola, in the last-named island, was erected out of the timbers of the Santa Maria a fort, the first structure built by Europeans in the New World. In the early part of January, 1493, Columbus sailed for Spain, where he arrived in March, and was everywhere greeted with rejoicings and applause.

In September of the following autumn Columbus sailed on his second voyage. He still believed that by this route westward he should reach, if indeed he had not already reached, the Indies. The result of the second voyage was the discovery of the Windward group and the islands of Jamaica and Porto Rico. It was at this time that the first colony was established in Hayti and Columbus's brother appointed governor. After an absence of nearly three years, Columbus returned to Spain in the summer of 1496—returned to find himself the victim of a thousand bitter jealousies and suspicions. All the rest of his life was clouded with persecutions and misfortunes. He made a third voyage, discovered the island of Trinidad and the mainland of South America, near the mouth of the Orinoco. Thence he sailed back to Hayti, where he found his colony disorganized; and here, while attempting to restore order, he was seized by Bobadilla, an agent of the Spanish government, put in chains and carried to Spain. After a disgraceful imprisonment, he was liberated and sent on a fourth and last voyage in search of the Indies; but besides making some explorations along the south side of the Gulf of Mexico, the expedition accomplished nothing, and Columbus, overwhelmed with discouragements, returned once more to his ungrateful country. The good Isabella was dead, and the great discoverer found himself at last a friendless and despised old man tottering into the grave. Death came, and fame afterward.

Of all the wrongs done to the memory of Columbus, perhaps the greatest was that which robbed him of the name of the new continent. This was bestowed upon one of the least worthy of the many adventurers whom the genius and success of Columbus had drawn to the West. In the year 1499, AMERIGO VESPUCCI, a Florentine navigator of some daring but no great celebrity, reached the eastern coast of South America. It does not appear that his explorations there were of any great importance. Two years later he made a second voyage, and then hastened home to give to Europe the first published account of the Western World. Vespucci's only merit consisted in his recognition of



1000	1100	1200	1300
<p>Central Period of the Middle Ages.</p> <p>24. Conrad II.</p> <p>35. Union of Castile and Leon.</p> <p>3. Henry the Black.</p> <p>56. Henry IV.</p> <p>HOUSE OF CAPET IN FRANCE.</p> <p>17. Canute.</p> <p>40. Hardicanute.</p> <p>42. Edward the Confessor.</p> <p>66. Harold.</p> <p>66. William I.</p> <p>87. William Rufus.</p> <p>DANISH KINGS IN ENGLAND.</p> <p>The NORMANS.</p>	<p>52. Frederick Barbarossa.</p> <p>The CRUSADES.</p> <p>99. The Kingdom of Jerusalem established.</p> <p>8. Louis VI.</p> <p>IV.</p> <p>The different Orders of Knighthood establish</p> <p>37. Louis VII.</p> <p>71. Conquest of Ireland.</p> <p>80. Philip II.</p> <p>38. Struggle of the Guelphs and Ghibellines.</p> <p>85. Stephen.</p> <p>William Rufus.</p> <p>Henry I.</p> <p>54. Henry II.</p> <p>89. Richard I.</p> <p>99. John.</p> <p>The PLANTAGENETS.</p>	<p>80. The Kings</p> <p>26. Louis IX.</p> <p>85. Philip IV.</p> <p>16. Phil</p> <p>28. H</p> <p>Wars of the Barons.</p> <p>15. Magna Charta granted.</p> <p>72. Edward I.</p> <p>7. Edward</p> <p>Wic</p> <p>27. E</p> <p>Heroic Age.</p>	<p>80. The Kings</p>
<p>1. LEIF ERICKSON, an Icelandic navigator, sailing westward from Greenland, discovers the coast of Labrador, and makes explorations as far south as Rhode Island.</p> <p>Hjalne Herjulfson driven by a storm within sight of the American coast A. D. 986.</p> <p>2 Thorwald Erickson returns to America and remains three years.</p> <p>5. Thorsteinn Erickson comes to America.</p> <p>7. Thorflinn Karlsefne explores the coast of Massachusetts.</p> <p>11. Expedition of Freydis to Vinland.</p>	<p>THE WESTERN CONTINENT UNKNOWN TO THE</p> <p>21. Erik Upsal sent as bishop to Vinland.</p> <p>DOUBTFUL ICELANDIC AND NORWEGIAN VOYAGES</p>		
<p>AMERICA</p>	<p>UNDER</p>	<p>THE</p>	<p>ABORIGI</p>
<p>CHART I.</p> <p>PERIOD OF VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.</p> <p>A. D. 986-1607.</p>			
<p>Icelandic discoveries in green. SPANISH " " yellow ENGLISH " " red. FRENCH " " blue. DUTCH " " brown PORTUGUESE " " purple</p>			

of Jerusalem overthrown.

35. **Columbus**

15. **John Huss.**

First book written in English, in which the author, Sir John Mandeville, declares the spherical figure of the earth and the practicality of circumnavigation.

80. **Charles VI.**

Printing

11-31. **Joan of Arc.**

22. **Charles VII.**

61. **Louis**

OF
IS.

77. **Richard II.**

Wars of the Roses.

The LANCASTERS.

74. **Ferdinand and Isabella.**

The TUDORS.

The PURITANS.

85. **Henry VII.**

The YORKS.

99. **Henry IV.**

13. **Henry V.**

22. **Henry VI.**

61. **Edward IV.**

83. **Edward V.**

83. **Richard III.**

rd III.

born.

De Gama doubles the Cape of Good Hope and reaches the East Indies.

Luther.

Emended.

The Reformation.

XI.

9. **John Calvin.**

72. **St. Bartholomew.**

15. **Francis I.**

89. **Henry IV.**

19. **Charles V.**

10. **Louis XIII.**

43. **Louis XIV**

3. **James I.**

25. **Charles I.**

The STUARTS.

58. **Elizabeth.**

PEAN NATIONS.

a great plague depopulates Iceland, Greenland, and Vinland; communication with the New World is cut off.

company of Norsemen in America.

L TRIBES.

92. **Columbus** discovers the Second voyage.

98. Third voyage.

98. **Discovers America.**

99. **Amerigo Vespucci** makes

12. **De Leon** explores Florida.

20. **Cortez** conquers Mexico.

25. **De Ayllon** in Carolina.

28. **De Narvaez** makes

39. **De Soto** in America.

65. **Melendez** founds St. Augustine.

97. **John Cabot** discovers North America.

98. **Sebastian Cabot** explores

75. **Martin Frobisher's** voyages.

78. **Drake** on the Pacific coast.

83. **Gilbert's** voyage.

86. **Raleigh's** attempts at colonization.

2. **Gosnold's** direct voyage.

3. **Pring's** voyage.

7. Settlement at Jamestown.

8. Waymouth in Maine.

20. The Puritans at Plymouth.

77. **Columbus** visits Iceland and learns of the New World.

24. **Verrazzani** explores

34. **Cartier's** expedition.

42. **Roberval** in

62. **Ribault**

64. **Lando**

98.

es the American coast.

tion.

Canada.

with the Huguenots.

nniere's enterprise.

La Roche in Nova Scotia.

4. **De Monts and Champlain.**

5. **Port Royal** founded.

8. Founding of Quebec.

9. **Hudson** in America.

14. Explorations of Block

and May.

14. Founding of New Amsterdam.

1. Voyages of the Carterons.

16. **Magellan** circumnavigates the globe.



THE NIGHT OF OCTOBER 11, 1492.

the fact that the recent discoveries were not a portion of that India already known, but were in reality another continent. In his published narrative all reference to Columbus was carefully omitted; and thus through his own craft, assisted by the unappreciative dullness of the times, the name of this Vespucci rather than that of the true discoverer was given to the New World.

The discovery of America produced great excitement throughout the states of Western Europe. In Spain especially there was wonderful zeal and enthusiasm. Within ten years after the death of Columbus, the principal islands of the West Indies were explored and colonized. In the year 1510 the Spaniards planted on the Isthmus of Darien their first continental colony. Three years later, VASCO NUNEZ DE BALBOA, the governor of the colony, learning from the natives that another ocean lay only a short distance to the westward, crossed the isthmus and from an eminence looked down upon the Pacific. Not satisfied with merely seeing the great water, he waded in a short distance, and drawing his sword after the pompous Spanish fashion, took possession of the ocean in the name of the king of Spain.

Meanwhile, JUAN PONCE DE LEON, who had been a companion of Columbus on his second voyage, fitted out a private expedition of discovery and adventure. De Leon had grown rich as governor of Porto Rico, and while growing rich had also grown old. But there was a fountain of perpetual youth somewhere in the Bahamas—so said all the learning and intelligence of Spain—and in that fountain the wrinkled old cavalier would bathe and be young again. So in the year 1512 he set sail from Porto Rico; and stopping first at San Salvador and the neighboring islands, he came, on Easter Sunday, the 27th of March, in sight of an unknown shore. He supposed that another island more beautiful than the rest was discovered. There were waving forests, green leaves, birds of song and the fragrance of blossoms. Partly in honor of the day, called in the ritual of the Church Pascua Florida, and partly to describe the delightful landscape that opened on his sight, he named the new shore Florida—the Land of Flowers.

After a few days a landing was effected a short distance north of where, a half century later, were laid the foundations of St. Augustine. The country was claimed for the king of Spain, and the search for the youth-restoring fountain was eagerly prosecuted. The romantic adventurer turned southward, explored the coast for many leagues, discovered and named the Tortugas, doubled Cape Florida, and then sailed back to Porto Rico, not perceptibly younger than when he started.

The king of Spain rewarded Ponce with the governorship of his

Land of Flowers, and sent him thither again to establish a colony. The aged veteran did not, however, reach his province until the year 1521, and then it was only to find the Indians in a state of bitter hostility. Scarcely had he landed when they fell upon him in a furious battle; many of the Spaniards were killed outright, and the rest had to betake themselves to the ships for safety. Ponce de Leon himself received a mortal wound from an arrow, and was carried back to Cuba to die.

CHAPTER IV.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES IN AMERICA.—CONTINUED.

THE year 1517 was marked by the discovery of Yucatan and the Bay of Campeachy by FERNANDEZ DE CORDOVA. While exploring the northern coast of the country, his company was attacked by the natives, and he himself mortally wounded. During the next year the coast of Mexico was explored for a great distance by GRIJALVA, assisted by Cordova's pilot; and in the year 1519, FERNANDO CORTEZ landed with his fleet at Tabasco and began his famous conquest of Mexico.

As soon as the news of the invasion spread abroad, the subjects of the Mexican empire were thrown into consternation. Armies of native warriors gathered to resist the progress of the Spaniards, but were dispersed by the invaders. After freeing the coast of his opponents, Cortez proceeded westward to Vera Cruz, a seaport one hundred and eighty miles south-east of the Mexican capital. Here he was met by ambassadors from the celebrated Montezuma, emperor of the country. From him they delivered messages and exhibited great anxiety lest Cortez should march into the interior. He assured them that such was indeed his purpose; that his business in the country was urgent; and that he must confer with Montezuma in person.

The ambassadors tried in vain to dissuade the terrible Spaniard. They made him costly presents, and then hastened back to their alarmed sovereign. Montezuma immediately despatched them a second time with presents still more valuable, and with urgent appeals to Cortez to proceed no farther. But the cupidity of the Spaniards was now inflamed to the highest pitch, and burning their ships behind them, they began their march towards the capital. The Mexican em-

peror by his messengers forbade their approach to his city. Still they pressed on. The nations tributary to Montezuma threw off their allegiance, made peace with the conqueror, and even joined his standard. The irresolute and vacillating Indian monarch knew not what to do. The Spaniards came in sight of the city—a glittering and splendid vision of spires and temples; and the poor Montezuma came forth to receive his remorseless enemies. On the morning of the 8th of November, 1519, the Spanish army marched over the causeway leading into the Mexican capital and was quartered in the great central square near the temple of the Aztec god of war.



FERNANDO CORTEZ.

It was now winter time. For a month Cortez remained quietly in the city. He was permitted to go about freely with his soldiers, and was even allowed to examine the sacred altars and shrines where human sacrifices were daily offered up to the deities of Mexico. He made himself familiar with the defences of the capital and the Mexican mode of warfare. On every side he found inexhaustible stores of provisions, treasures of gold and silver, and what greatly excited his solicitude, arsenals filled with bows and javelins. But although surrounded with splendor and abundance, his own situation became extremely critical. The millions of natives who swarmed around him were becoming familiar with his troops and no longer believed them immortal. There were mutterings of an outbreak which threatened to overwhelm him in an hour. In this emergency the Spanish general adopted the bold and unscrupulous expedient of seizing Montezuma and holding him as a hostage. A plausible pretext for this outrage was found in the fact that the Mexican governor of the province

adjacent to Vera Cruz had attacked the Spanish garrison at that place, and that Montezuma himself had acted with hostility and treachery towards the Spaniards while they were marching on the city. As soon as the emperor was in his power, Cortez compelled him to acknowledge himself a vassal of the king of Spain and to agree to the payment of a sum amounting to six million three hundred thousand dollars, with an annual tribute afterwards.

In the mean time, Velasquez, the Spanish governor of Cuba, jealous of the fame of Cortez, had despatched a force to Mexico to arrest his progress and to supersede him in the command. The expedition was led by PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ, the same who was afterwards governor of Florida. His forces consisted of more than twelve hundred well armed and well disciplined soldiers, besides a thousand Indian servants and guides. But the vigilant Cortez had meanwhile been informed by messengers from Vera Cruz of the movement which his enemies at home had set on foot against him, and he determined to sell his command only at the price of his own life and the lives of all his followers. He therefore instructed Alvarado, one of his subordinate officers, to remain in the capital with a small force of a hundred and forty men; and with the remainder, numbering less than two hundred, he himself hastily withdrew from the city and proceeded by a forced march to encounter De Narvaez on the sea-coast. On the night of the 26th of May, 1520, while the soldiers of the latter were quietly asleep in their camp near Vera Cruz, Cortez burst upon them with the fury of despair, and before they could rally or well understand the terrible onset, compelled the whole force to surrender. Then, adding the general's skill to the warrior's prowess, he succeeded in inducing the conquered army to join his own standard; and with his forces thus augmented to six times their original numbers he began a second time his march towards the capital.

While Cortez was absent on this expedition, the Mexicans of the capital rose in arms, and the possession of the country was staked on the issue of war. Alvarado, either fearing a revolt or from a spirit of atrocious cruelty, had attacked the Mexicans while they were celebrating one of their festivals, and slain five hundred of the leaders and priests. The people in a frenzy of astonishment and rage flew to their arms and laid siege to the palace where Alvarado and his men were fortified. The Spaniards were already hard pressed when Cortez at the head of his new army reached the city. He entered without opposition and joined Alvarado's command; but the passions of the Mexicans were now thoroughly aroused, and not all

the diplomacy of the Spanish general could again bring them into subjection. In a few days the conflict began in earnest. The streets were deluged with the blood of tens of thousands; and not a few of the Spaniards fell before the vengeance of the native warriors. For months there was almost incessant fighting in and around the city; and it became evident that the Spaniards must ultimately be overwhelmed and destroyed.

To save himself from his peril, Cortez adopted a second shameless expedient, more wicked than the first. Montezuma was compelled to go upon the top of the palace in front of the great square where the besiegers were gathered and to counsel them to make peace with the Spaniards. For a moment there was universal silence, then a murmur of vexation and rage, and then Montezuma was struck down by the javelins of his own subjects. In a few days he died of wretchedness and despair, and for a while the warriors, overwhelmed with remorse, abandoned the conflict. But with the renewal of the strife Cortez was obliged to leave the city. Finally a great battle was fought, and the Spanish arms and valor triumphed. In the crisis of the struggle the sacred Mexican banner was struck down and captured. Dismay seized the hosts of puny warriors, and they fled in all directions. In December of 1520, Cortez again marched on the capital. A siege, lasting until August of the following year, ensued; and then the famous city yielded. The empire of the Montezumas was overthrown, and Mexico became a Spanish province.

Among the many daring enterprises which marked the beginning of the sixteenth century, that of FERDINAND MAGELLAN is worthy of special mention. A Portuguese by birth, a navigator by profession, this man, so noted for extraordinary boldness and ability, determined to discover a south-west rather than a north-west passage to Asia. With this object in view, he appealed to the king of Portugal for ships and men. The monarch listened coldly, and did nothing to give encouragement. Incensed at this treatment, Magellan threw off his allegiance, went to Spain—the usual resort of disappointed seamen—and laid his plans before Charles V. The emperor caught eagerly at the opportunity, and ordered a fleet of five ships to be immediately fitted at the public expense and properly manned with crews.

The voyage was begun from Seville in August of 1519. Sailing southward across the equinoctial line, Magellan soon reached the coast of South America, and spent the autumn in explorations, hoping to find some strait that should lead him westward into that ocean which Balboa had discovered six years previously. Not at first successful in this effort,

he passed the winter—which was summer on that side of the equator—somewhere on the coast of Brazil. Renewing his voyage southward, he came at last to the eastern mouth of that strait which still bears the name of its discoverer, and passing through it found himself in the open and boundless ocean. The weather was beautiful, and the peaceful deep was called the Pacific.

Setting his prows to the north of west, Magellan now held steadily on his course for nearly four months, suffering much meanwhile from want of water and scarcity of provisions. In March of 1520 he came to the group of islands called the Ladrões, situated about midway between Australia and Japan. Sailing still westward, he reached the Philippine group, where he was killed in a battle with the natives. But the fleet was now less than four hundred miles from China, and the rest of the route was easy. A new captain was chosen, and the voyage continued by way of the Moluccas, where a cargo of spices was taken on board for the market of Western Europe. Only a single ship was deemed in a fit condition to venture on the homeward voyage; but in this vessel the crews embarked, and returning by way of the Cape of Good Hope arrived in Spain on the 17th day of September, 1522. The circumnavigation of the globe, long believed in as a possibility, had now become a thing of reality. The theory of the old astronomers, of Mandeville and of Columbus had been proved by actual demonstration.

The next important voyage undertaken to the shores of America was in the year 1520. LUCAS VASQUEZ DE AYLLON, who had been a judge in St. Domingo and had acquired great riches, conducted the expedition. He and six other wealthy men, eager to stock their plantations with slaves, determined to do so by kidnapping natives from the neighboring Bahamas. Two vessels were fitted out for the purpose, and De Ayllon commanded in person. When the vessels were nearing their destination, they encountered a storm which drove them northward about a hundred and fifty leagues, and brought them against the coast of South Carolina. The ships entered St. Helena Sound and anchored in the mouth of the Cambahee River. The name of Chicora was given to the country, and the river was called the Jordan. The timid but friendly natives, as soon as their fears had subsided, began to make presents to the strangers and to treat them with great cordiality. They flocked on board the ships; and when the decks were crowded, De Ayllon, watching his opportunity, weighed anchor and sailed away. A few days afterward an avenging storm sent one of the ships to the bottom of the sea, and death came mercifully to most of the poor wretches who were huddled under the hatches of the her.

Going at once to Spain, De Ayllon repeated the story of his exploit to Charles V., who rewarded him with the governorship of Chicora and the privilege of conquest. Returning to his province in 1525, he found the natives intensely hostile. His best ship ran aground in the mouth of the Jordan, and the outraged Indians fell upon him with fury, killing many of the treacherous crew, and making the rest glad enough to get away with their lives. De Ayllon himself returned to St. Domingo humiliated and ruined. Thus ended the first disgraceful effort to enslave the Indians.

In the year 1526, Charles V. appointed the unprincipled PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ governor of Florida, and to the appointment was added the usual privilege of conquest. The territory thus placed at his disposal extended from Cape Sabie fully three-fifths of the way around the Gulf of Mexico, and was limited on the south-west by the mouth of the River of Palms. With this extensive commission De Narvaez arrived at Tampa Bay in the month of April, 1528. His force consisted of two hundred and sixty soldiers and forty horsemen. The natives treated them with suspicion, and, anxious to be rid of the intruders, began to hold up their gold trinkets and to point to the north. The hint was eagerly caught at by the avaricious Spaniards, whose imaginations were set on fire with the sight of the precious metal. They struck boldly into the forests, expecting to find cities and empires, and found instead swamps and savages. They reached the Withlacoochie and crossed it by swimming, they passed over the Suwanee in a canoe which they made for the occasion, and finally came to Apalachee, a squalid village of forty cabins. This, then, was the mighty city to which their guides had directed them.

Oppressed with fatigue and goaded by hunger, they plunged again into the woods, wading through lagoons and assailed by lurking savages, until at last they reached the sea at the harbor of St. Mark's. Here they expected to find their ships, but not a ship was there, or had been. With great labor they constructed some brigantines, and put to sea in the vain hope of reaching the Spanish settlements in Mexico. They were tossed by storms, driven out of sight of land and then thrown upon the shore again, drowned, slain by the savages, left in the solitary woods dead of starvation and despair, until finally four miserable men of all the adventurous company, under the leadership of the heroic De Vaca, first lieutenant of the expedition, were rescued at the village of San Miguel, on the Pacific coast, and conducted to the city of Mexico. The story can hardly be paralleled in the annals of suffering and peril.

But the Spaniards were not yet satisfied. In the year 1537 a new expedition was planned which surpassed all the others in the bril-

liancy of its beginning and the disasters of its end. The most cavalier of the cavaliers was FERDINAND DE SOTO, of Xeres. Besides the distinction of a noble birth, he had been the lieutenant and bosom friend of Pizarro, and had now returned from Peru loaded with wealth. So great was his popularity in Spain that he had only to demand what he would have of the emperor that his request might be granted. At his own dictation he was accordingly appointed governor of Cuba and Florida, with the privilege of exploring and conquering the latter country at his pleasure. A great company of young Spaniards, nearly all of them wealthy and high-born, flocked to his standard. Of these he selected six hundred of the most gallant and daring. They were clad in costly suits of armor of the knightly pattern, with airy scarfs and silken embroidery and all the trappings of chivalry. Elaborate preparations were made for the grand conquest; arms and stores were provided; shackles were wrought for the slaves; tools for the forge and workshop were abundantly supplied; bloodhounds were bought and trained for the work of hunting fugitives; cards to keep the young knights excited with gaming; twelve priests to conduct religious ceremonies; and, last of all, a drove of swine to fatten on the maize and mast of the country.

When, after a year of impatience and delay, everything was at last in readiness, the gay Castilian squadron, ten vessels in all, left the harbor of San Lucar to conquer imaginary empires in the New World. The fleet touched at Havana, and the enthusiasm was kindled even to a higher pitch than it had reached in Spain. De Soto left his wife to govern Cuba during his absence; and after a prosperous and exulting voyage of two weeks, the ships cast anchor in Tampa Bay. This was in the early part of June, 1539. When some of the Cubans who had joined the expedition first saw the silent forests and gloomy morasses that stretched before them, they were terrified at the prospect, and sailed back to the security of home; but De Soto and his cavaliers despised such cowardice, and began their march into the interior. During the months of July, August and September they marched to the northward, wading through swamps, swimming rivers and fighting the Indians. In October they arrived at the country of the Apalachians, on the left bank of Flint River, where they determined to spend the winter. For four months they remained in this locality, sending out exploring parties in various directions. One of these companies reached the gulf at Pensacola, and made arrangements that supplies should be sent out from Cuba to that place during the following summer.

In the early spring the Spaniards left their winter quarters and continued their march to the north and east. An Indian guide told them of

a powerful and populous empire in that direction ; a woman was empress, and the land was full of gold. A Spanish soldier, one of the men of Narvaez, who had been kept a captive among the Indians, denied the truth of the extravagant story ; but De Soto only said that he would find gold or see poverty with his own eyes, and the freebooters pressed on through the swamps and woods. It was April, 1540, when they came upon the Ogechee River. Here they were delayed. The Indian guide went mad ; and when the priests had conjured the evil spirit out of him, he repaid their benevolence by losing the whole company in the forest. By the 1st of May they had reached South Carolina, and were within a two days' march of where De Ayllon had lost his ships and men at the mouth of the Jordan. Thence the wanderers turned westward ; but that De Soto and his men crossed the mountains into North Carolina and Tennessee is hardly to be believed. They seem rather to have passed across Northern Georgia from the Chattahoochee to the upper tributaries of the Coosa, and thence down that river to the valleys of Lower Alabama. Here, just above the confluence of the Alabama and the Tombecbee, they came upon the fortified Indian town called Mauville, or Mobile, where a terrible battle was fought with the natives. The town was set on fire, and two thousand five hundred of the Indians were killed or burned to death. Eighteen of De Soto's men were killed, and a hundred and fifty wounded. The Spaniards also lost about eighty horses and all of their baggage.

The ships of supply had meanwhile arrived at Pensacola, but De Soto and his men, although in desperate circumstances, were too stubborn and proud to avail themselves of help or even to send news of their whereabouts. They turned resolutely to the north ; but the country was poor, and their condition grew constantly worse and worse. By the middle of December they had reached the country of the Chickasas, in Northern Mississippi. They crossed the Yazoo ; the weather was severe ; snow fell ; and the Spaniards were on the point of starvation. They succeeded, however, in finding some fields of ungathered maize, and then came upon a deserted Indian village which promised them shelter for the winter. After remaining here till February, 1541, they were suddenly attacked in the dead of night by the Indians, who, at a preconcerted signal, set the town on fire, determined then and there to make an end of the desolating foreigners ; but the Spanish weapons and discipline again saved De Soto and his men from destruction.

After gathering provisions and reclothing themselves as well as possible, the Spaniards set out again in early spring to journey still farther westward. The guides now brought them to the Mississippi. The point

where the majestic Father of Waters was first seen by white men was at the lower Chickasaw Bluff, a little north of the thirty-fourth parallel of latitude; the day of the discovery cannot certainly be known. The Indians came down the river in a fleet of canoes, and offered to carry the Spaniards over; but the horses could not be transported until barges were built for that purpose. The crossing was not effected until the latter part of May.

De Soto's men now found themselves in the land of the Dakotas. Journeying to the north-west, they passed through a country where wild fruits were plentiful and subsistence easy. The natives were inoffensive and superstitious. At one place they were going to worship the woe-begone cavaliers as the children of the gods, but De Soto was too good a Catholic to permit such idolatry. The Spaniards continued their march until they reached the St. Francis River, which they crossed, and gained the southern limits of Missouri, in the vicinity of New Madrid. Thence westward the march was renewed for about two hundred miles; thence southward to the Hot Springs and the tributaries of the Washita River. On the banks of this river, at the town of Atiamque, they passed the winter of 1541-42. The Indians were found to be much more civilized than those east of the Mississippi; but their civilization did not protect them in the least from the horrid cruelties which the Spaniards practiced. No consideration of justice, humanity or mercy moved the stony hearts of these polite and Christian warriors. Indian towns were set on fire for sport; Indian hands were chopped off for a whim; and Indian captives burned alive because, under fear of death, they had told a falsehood.

But De Soto's men were themselves growing desperate in their misfortunes. They turned again toward the sea, and passing down the tributaries of the Washita to the junction of that stream with the Red River, came upon the Mississippi in the neighborhood of Natchez. The spirit of De Soto was at last completely broken. The haughty cavalier bowed his head and became a prey to melancholy. No more dazzling visions of Peru and Mexico flitted before his imagination. A malignant fever seized upon his emaciated frame, and then death. The priests chanted a requiem, and in the middle of the solemn night his sorrowful companions put the dead hero's body into a rustic coffin, and rowing out a distance from shore sunk it in the Mississippi. Ferdinand de Soto had found a grave under the rolling waters of the great river with which his name will be associated for ever.

Before his death, De Soto had named Moscoso as his successor; and now, under the leadership of the new governor, the ragged, half-starved adventurers, in the vain hope of reaching Mexico, turned once more to the

BURIAL OF THE DEAD



west. They crossed the country to the upper waters of the Red River, on the confines of Texas. Thence they turned northward into the territory of the Pawnees and the Comanches, ranging the hunting-grounds of those fierce savages until stopped by the mountains. In December of 1542, after almost endless wanderings and hardships, they came again to the Mississippi, reaching the now familiar stream a short distance above the mouth of Red River. They now formed the desperate resolution of building boats, and thus descending the river to the gulf. They erected a forge, broke off the fetters of the captives in order to procure iron, sawed timber in the forest, and at last completed seven brigantines and launched them. The time thus occupied extended from January to July of 1543. The Indians of the neighborhood were now for the last time plundered in order to furnish supplies for the voyage; and on the 2d day of July the Spaniards went on board their boats and started for the sea. The distance was almost five hundred miles, and seventeen days were required to make the descent. On reaching the Gulf of Mexico, they steered to the south-west; and keeping as close to the shore as possible, after fifty-five days of buffetings and perils along the dangerous coast, they came—three hundred and eleven famished and heart-broken fugitives—to the settlement at the mouth of the River of Palms; and thus ended the most marvelous expedition in the early history of our country.

The next attempt by the Spaniards to colonize Florida was in the year 1565. The enterprise was entrusted to PEDRO MELENDEZ, a Spanish soldier of ferocious disposition and criminal practices. He was under sentence to pay a heavy fine at the very time when he received his commission from the bigoted Philip II. The contract between that monarch and Melendez was to the effect that the latter should within three years explore the coast of Florida, conquer the country, and plant in some favorable district a colony of not less than five hundred persons, of whom one hundred should be married men. Melendez was to receive two hundred and twenty-five square miles of land adjacent to the settlement, and an annual salary of two thousand dollars. Twenty-five hundred persons collected around Melendez to join in the expedition. The fleet left Spain in July, reached Porto Rico early in August, and on the 28th of the same month came in sight of Florida.

It must now be understood that the real object had in view by Melendez was to attack and destroy a colony of French Protestants called Huguenots, who, in the previous year, had made a settlement about thirty five miles above the mouth of the St. John's River. This was, of course, within the limits of the territory claimed by Spain; and Melendez at once perceived that to extirpate these French heretics in the name of patriotism

and religion would be likely to restore his shattered character and bring him into favor again. His former crimes were to be washed out in the blood of the innocents. Moreover, the Catholic party at the French court had communicated with the Spanish court as to the whereabouts and intentions of the Huguenots, so that Melendez knew precisely where to find them and how to compass their destruction.

It was St. Augustine's day when the dastardly Spaniard came in sight of the shore, but the landing was not effected until the 2d of September. The spacious harbor and the small river which enters it from the south were named in honor of the saint. On the 8th day of the same month, Philip II. was proclaimed monarch of all North America; a solemn mass was said by the priests; and there, in the sight of forest, and sky, and sea, the foundation-stones of the oldest town in the United States were put into their place. This was seventeen years before the founding of Santa Fé by ANTONIO DE ESPEGO, and forty-two years before the settlement at Jamestown.

As soon as the new town was sufficiently advanced to be secure against accident, Melendez turned his attention to the Huguenots. The latter were expecting to be attacked, but had supposed that the Spanish fleet would sail up the St. John's, and make the onset from that direction. Accordingly, knowing that they must fight or die, all the French vessels except two left their covert in the river and put to sea, intending to anticipate the movements of the Spaniards; but a furious storm arose and dashed to pieces every ship in the fleet. Most of the crews, however, reached the shore just above the mouth of the river. Melendez now collected his forces at St. Augustine, stole through the woods and swamps, and falling unexpectedly on the defenceless colony, utterly destroyed it. Men, women and children were alike given up to butchery. Two hundred were killed outright. A few escaped into the forest, Laudonniere, the Huguenot leader, among the number, and making their way to the coast, were picked up by the two French ships which had been saved from the storm.

The crews of the wrecked vessels were the next object of Spanish vengeance. Melendez discovered their whereabouts, and deceiving them with treacherous promises of clemency, induced them to surrender. They were ferried across the river in boats; but no sooner were they completely in the power of their enemy than their hands were bound behind them, and they were driven off, tied two and two, toward St. Augustine. As they approached the Spanish fort the signal was given by sounding a trumpet, and the work of slaughter began anew. Seven hundred defenceless victims were added to the previous atrocious massacre. Only a few

mechanics and Catholic servants were left alive. Under these bloody auspices the first permanent European colony was planted in our country. In what way the Huguenots were revenged upon their enemies will be told in another place.

The Spaniards had now explored the entire coast from the Isthmus of Darien to Port Royal in South Carolina. They were acquainted with the country west of the Mississippi as far north as New Mexico and Missouri, and east of that river they had traversed the Gulf States as far as the mountain ranges of Tennessee and North Carolina. With the establishment of their first permanent colony on the coast of Florida the period of Spanish voyage and discovery may be said to end.

Before closing this chapter, a brief account of the only important voyage made by the Portuguese to America will be given: At the time of the first discovery by Columbus, the unambitious John II. was king of Portugal. He paid but little attention to the New World, preferring the security and dullness of his own capital to the splendid allurements of the Atlantic. In 1495 he was succeeded on the throne by his cousin Manuel, a man of very different character. This monarch could hardly forgive his predecessor for having allowed Spain to snatch from the flag of Portugal the glory of Columbus's achievements. In order to secure some of the benefits which yet remained, King Manuel fitted out two vessels, and in the summer of 1501 commissioned GASPAR CORTEREAL to sail on a voyage of discovery. The Portuguese vessels reached America in the month of July, and beginning at some point on the shores of Maine, sailed northward, exploring the coast for nearly seven hundred miles. Just below the fiftieth parallel of latitude Cortereal met the icebergs, and could go no farther. Little attention was paid by him to the great forests of pine and hemlock which stood tall and silent along the shore, promising ship-yards and cities in after times. He satisfied his rapacity by kidnapping fifty Indians, whom, on his return to Portugal, he sold as slaves. A new voyage was then undertaken, with the avowed purpose of capturing another cargo of natives for the slave-mart of Europe; but when a year went by, and no tidings arrived from the fleet, the brother of the Portuguese captain sailed in hope of finding the missing vessels. He also was lost, but in what manner has never been ascertained. The fate of the Cortereals and their slave-ships has remained one of the unsolved mysteries of the sea.

CHAPTER V.

THE FRENCH IN AMERICA.

FRANCE was not slow to profit by the discoveries of Columbus. As early as 1504 the fishermen of Normandy and Brittany began to ply their vocation on the banks of Newfoundland. A map of the Gulf of St. Lawrence was drawn by a Frenchman in the year 1506. Two years later some Indians were taken to France; and in 1518 the attention of Francis I. was turned to the colonization of the New World. Five years afterward a voyage of discovery and exploration was planned, and JOHN VERRAZZANI, a native of Florence, was commissioned to conduct the expedition. The special object had in view was to discover a north-west passage to Asia.

In the month of January, 1524, Verrazzani left the shores of Europe. His fleet consisted at first of four vessels; but three of them were damaged in a storm, and the voyage was undertaken with a single ship, called the *Dolphin*. For fifty days, through the buffetings of tempestuous weather, the courageous mariner held on his course, and on the 7th day of March discovered the main land in the latitude of Wilmington. He first sailed southward a hundred and fifty miles in the hope of finding a harbor, but found none. Returning northward, he finally anchored somewhere along the low sandy beach which stretches between the mouth of Cape Fear River and Pamlico Sound. Here he began a traffic with the natives. The Indians of this neighborhood were found to be a gentle and timid sort of creatures, unsuspicious and confiding. A half-drowned sailor who was washed ashore by the surf was treated with great kindness, and as soon as opportunity offered, permitted to return to the ship.

After a few days the voyage was continued toward the north. The whole coast of New Jersey was explored, and the hills marked as containing minerals. The harbor of New York was entered, and its safe and spacious waters were noted with admiration. At Newport, Rhode Island, Verrazzani anchored for fifteen days, and a trade was again opened with the Indians. Before leaving the place the French sailors repaid the confidence of the natives by kidnapping a child and attempting to steal a defenceless Indian girl.

Sailing from Newport, Verrazzani continued his explorations north-

ward. The long and broken line of the New England coast was traced with considerable care. The Indians of the north were wary and suspicious. They would buy neither ornaments nor toys, but were eager to purchase knives and weapons of iron. Passing to the east of Nova Scotia, the bold navigator reached Newfoundland in the latter part of May. In July he returned to France and published an account, still extant, of his great discoveries. The name of New France was now given to the whole country whose sea-coast had been traced by the adventurous crew of the Dolphin.

Such was the distracted condition of France at this time, that another expedition was not planned for a period of ten years. In 1534, however, Chabot, admiral of the kingdom, selected JAMES CARTIER, a seaman of St. Malo, in Brittany, to make a new voyage to America. Two ships were fitted out for the enterprise, and after no more than twenty days of sailing under cloudless skies anchored on the 10th day of May off the coast of Newfoundland. Before the middle of July, Cartier had circumnavigated the island to the northward, crossed the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the south of Anticosti, and entered the Bay of Chaleurs. Not finding, as he had hoped, a passage out of this bay westward, he changed his course to the north again, and ascended the coast as far as Gaspé Bay. Here, upon a point of land, he set up a cross bearing a shield with the lily of France, and proclaimed the French king monarch of the country. Pressing his way still farther northward, and then westward, he entered the St. Lawrence, and ascended the broad estuary until the narrowing banks made him aware that he was in the mouth of a river. Cartier, thinking it impracticable to pass the winter in the New World, now turned his prow toward France, and in thirty days anchored his ships in the harbor of St. Malo.

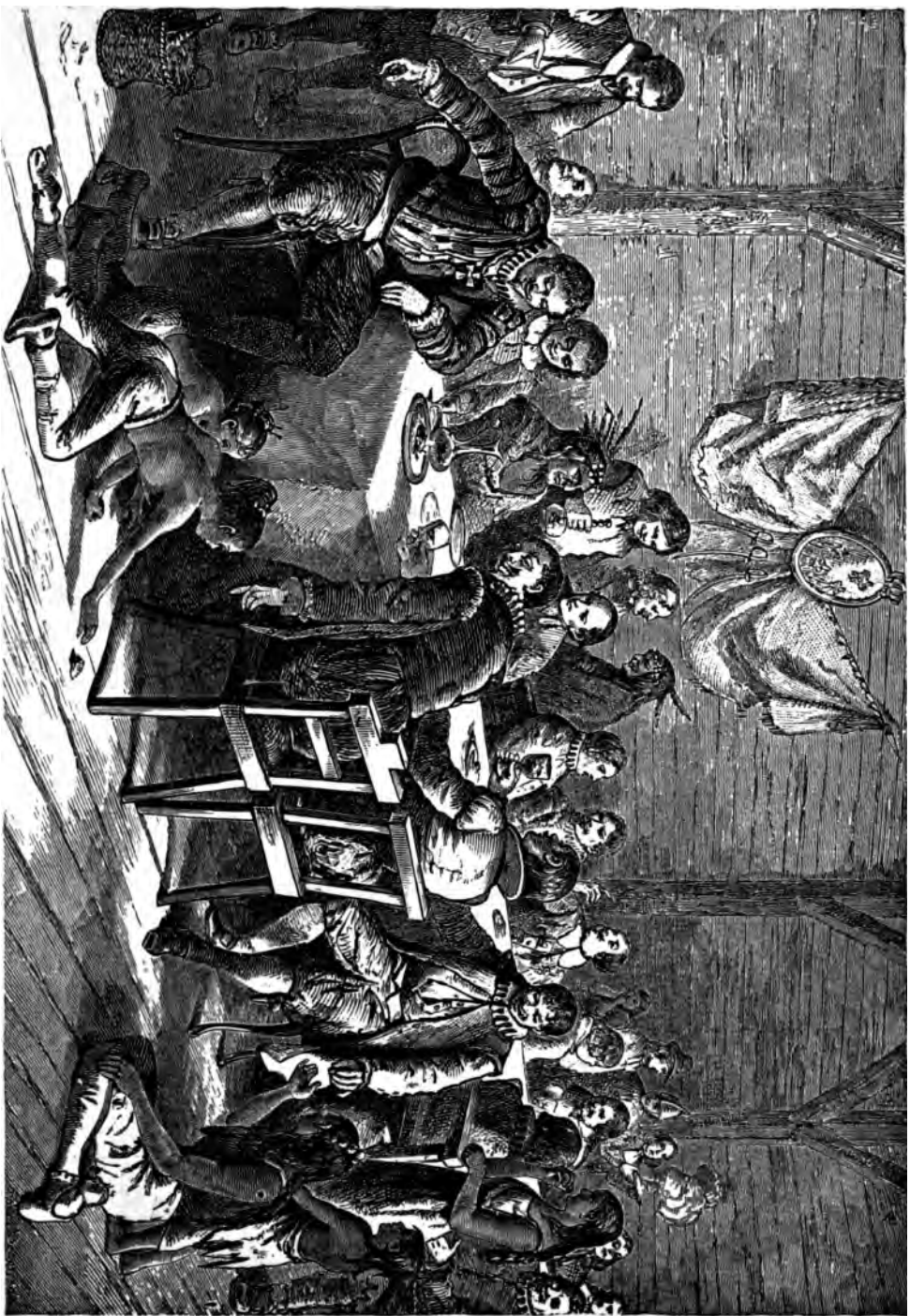
So great was the fame of Cartier's first voyage that another was planned immediately. Three good ships were provided, and quite a number of young noblemen joined the expedition. Colonization rather than discovery was now the inspiring motive. The sails were set by zealous and excited crews, and on the 19th of May the new voyage was begun. This time there was stormy weather, yet the passage to Newfoundland was made by the 10th of August. It was the day of St. Lawrence, and the name of that martyr was accordingly given to the gulf, and afterward to the noble stream which enters it from the west. Sailing northward around Anticosti, the expedition proceeded up the river to the island of Orleans, where the ships were moored in a place of safety. Two Indians whom Cartier had taken with him to France in the previous year now gave information that higher up the river there was an important

town on the island of Hochelaga. Proceeding thither in his boats, the French captain found it as the Indians had said. A beautiful village lay there at the foot of a high hill in the middle of the island. Climbing to the top of the hill, Cartier, as suggested by the scene around him, named the island and town Mont-Real. The country was declared to belong by right of discovery to the king of France; and then the boats dropped down the river to the ships. During this winter twenty-five of Cartier's men were swept off by the scurvy, a malady hitherto unknown in Europe.

With the opening of spring, preparations were made to return to France. The terrible winter had proved too much for French enthusiasm. The emblem of Catholicism, bearing the arms of France, was again planted in the soil of the New World, and the homeward voyage began; but before the ships had left their anchorage, the kindly king of the Hurons, who had treated Cartier with so much generosity, was decoyed on board and carried off to die. On the 6th day of July the fleet reached St. Malo in safety; but by the accounts which Cartier published on his return the French were greatly discouraged. Neither silver nor gold had been found on the banks of the St. Lawrence; and what was a new world good for that had not silver and gold?

Francis of La Roque, lord of ROBERVAL, in Picardy, was the next to undertake the colonization of the countries discovered by the French. This nobleman, four years after Cartier's return from his second voyage, was commissioned by the court of France to plant a colony on the St. Lawrence. The titles of viceroy and lieutenant-general of New France were conferred upon him, and much other vainglorious ceremony attended his preparations for departure. The man, however, who was chiefly relied on to give character and direction to the proposed colony was no other than James Cartier. He only seemed competent to conduct the enterprise with any promise of success. His name was accordingly added to the list, and he was honored with the office of chief pilot and captain-general of the expedition.

The next thing to be done was to find material for the colony. This was a difficult task. The French peasants and mechanics were not eager to embark for a country which promised nothing better than savages and snow. Cartier's honest narrative about the resources of New France had left no room for further dreaming. So the work of enlisting volunteers went on slowly, until the government adopted the plan of opening the prisons of the kingdom and giving freedom to whoever would join the expedition. There was a rush of robbers, swindlers and murderers, and the lists were immediately filled. Only counterfeiters and traitors were denied the privilege of gaining their liberty in the New World.



DINING-HALL OF THE FRENCH COLONISTS AT PORT ROYAL.

In the latter part of May, 1541, five ships, under the immediate command of Cartier, left France, and soon reached the St. Lawrence. The expedition proceeded up the river to the present site of Quebec, where a fort was erected and named Charlesbourg. Here the colonists passed the winter. Cartier, offended because of the subordinate position which he held, was sullen and gloomy, and made no effort to prosecute discoveries which could benefit no one but the ambitious Roberval. The two leaders never acted in concert; and when La Roque, in June of the following year, arrived with immigrants and supplies, Cartier secretly sailed away with his part of the squadron, and returned to Europe. Roberval was left in New France with three shiploads of criminals who could only be restrained by whipping and hanging. During the autumn some feeble efforts were made to discover a northern passage; the winter was long and severe, and spring was welcomed by the colonists chiefly for the opportunity which it gave them of returning to France. The enterprise undertaken with so much pomp had resulted in nothing. In the year 1549 Roberval, with a large company of emigrants, sailed on a second voyage, but the fleet was never heard of afterward.

A period of fifty years now elapsed before the French authorities again attempted to colonize America. Meanwhile, private enterprise and religious persecution had co-operated in an effort to accomplish in Florida and Carolina what the government had failed to accomplish on the St. Lawrence. About the middle of the sixteenth century Coligni, the Protestant admiral of France, formed the design of establishing in America a refuge for the persecuted Huguenots of his own country. In 1562 this liberal and influential minister obtained from the sovereign, Charles IX., the coveted privilege of planting a colony of Protestants in the New World. JOHN RIBAUT of Dieppe, a brave and experienced sailor, was selected to lead the Huguenots to the land of promise. Sailing in February, the company reached the coast of Florida at a point where three years later St. Augustine was founded. The River St. John's, called by the Spaniards the St. Matthew, was entered by the French and named the River of May. The vessels then continued northward along the coast until they came to the entrance of Port Royal; here it was determined to make the settlement. The colonists were landed on an island, and a stone engraved with the arms of their native land was set up to mark the place. A fort was erected, and in honor of Charles IX. named Carolina—a name which a century afterward was retained by the English and applied to the whole country from the Savannah River to the southern boundary of Virginia. In this fort Ribault left twenty-six men to keep possession, and then sailed back to France for additional

emigrants and stores. But civil war was now raging in the kingdom, and it was quite impossible to procure either supplies or colonists. No reinforcements were sent to Carolina, and in the following spring the men in the fort, discouraged with long waiting, grew mutinous, and killed their leader for attempting to control them. Then they constructed a rude brig and put to sea. After they had been driven about by the winds for a long time, they were picked up half starved by an English ship and carried to the coast of France.

Coligni did not yet despair of success in what he had undertaken. Two years after the first attempt another colony was planned, and LAUDONNIERE chosen leader. The character, however, of this second Protestant company was very bad. Many of them were abandoned men, of little industry and no prudence. The harbor of Port Royal was now shunned by the Huguenots, and a point on the River St. John's about fifteen miles west of where St. Augustine now stands was selected for the settlement. A fort was built here, and things were going well until a part of the colonists, under the pretext of escaping from famine, contrived to get away with two of the ships. Instead of returning to France, as they had promised, they began to practice piracy in the adjacent seas, until they were caught, brought back and justly hanged. The rest of the settlers, improvident and dissatisfied, were on the eve of breaking up the colony, when Ribault arrived with supplies of every sort, and restored order and content. It was at this time that the Spaniard Melendez, as already narrated, discovered the whereabouts of the Huguenots, and murdered the entire company.

It remained for DOMINIC DE GOURGES, a soldier of Gascony, to visit the Spaniards of St. Augustine with signal vengeance. This man fitted out three ships, mostly with his own means, and with only fifty daring seamen on board arrived in mid-winter on the coast of Florida. With this handful of soldiers he surprised successively three Spanish forts on the St. John's, and made prisoners of the inmates. Then, when he was unable to hold his position any longer, he hanged his leading captives to the branches of the trees, and put up this inscription to explain what he had done: "Not Spaniards, but murderers."

In the year 1598 the attention of the government of France was once more directed to the claims which French discovery had established in America. The MARQUIS OF LA ROCHE, a nobleman of influence and distinction, now obtained a commission authorizing him to found an empire in the New World. The prisons of France were again opened to furnish the emigrants, and the colony was soon made up. Crossing the Atlantic by the usual route, the vessels reached the coast of Nova Scotia, and

anchored at Sable Island. A more dismal place could not have been found between Labrador and Mexico ; yet here, on this desolate island, La Roche left forty men to form a settlement, while he himself, under the pretext of procuring more men and supplies, returned to France. Shortly after his arrival in that country he died ; and for seven dreary years the new French empire, composed of forty criminals, languished on Sable Island. Then they were mercifully picked up by some passing ships and carried back to France. Their punishment had been enough, and they were never remanded to prison.

But the time had now come when a colony of Frenchmen should actually be established in America. In the year 1603 the sovereignty of the country from the latitude of Philadelphia to one degree north of Montreal was granted to DE MONTS. The items of chief importance in the patent which he received from the king were a monopoly of the fur-trade of the new country and religious freedom for Huguenot immigrants. De Monts, with two shiploads of colonists, left France early in March of 1604, and after a pleasant voyage reached the Bay of Fundy. The summer was spent in making explorations and in trafficking with the natives. De Monts seems to have been uncertain as to where he should plant his colony ; but while in this frame of mind, Poutrincourt, the captain of one of the ships, being greatly pleased with a harbor which he had discovered on the north-west coast of Nova Scotia, asked and obtained a grant of the same, together with some beautiful lands adjacent, and he and a part of the crew went on shore. De Monts, with the rest of the colony, crossed to the west side of the bay, and began to build a fort on an island at the mouth of the St. Croix River. But in the following spring they abandoned this place, and returned to the harbor which had been granted to Poutrincourt. Here, on the 14th day of November, 1605, the foundations of the first permanent French settlement in America were laid. The name of Port Royal was given to the harbor and the fort, and the whole country, including Nova Scotia, the surrounding islands and the main land as far south as the St. Croix River, was called ACADIA.

Two years before the settlement was made at Port Royal, SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN, one of the most eminent and soldierly men of his times, was commissioned by a company of Rouen merchants to explore the country of the St. Lawrence and establish a trading-post. The traders saw that a traffic in the furs which those regions so abundantly supplied was a surer road to riches than rambling about in search of gold and diamonds. Under this commission, Champlain crossed the ocean, entered the gulf, sailed up the river, and with remarkable prudence and good judgment selected the spot on which Quebec now stands as the site for a fort. In t

autumn of 1603, he returned to France, and published an interesting and faithful account of his expedition.

In the year 1608, Champlain again visited America, and on the 3d of July in that year the foundations of Quebec were laid. In the following year he and two other Frenchmen joined a company of Huron and Algonquin Indians who were at war with the Iroquois of New York. While marching with this party of warriors, he ascended the Sorel River until he came to the long, narrow lake which he was the first white man to look upon, and which has ever since borne the name of its discoverer.

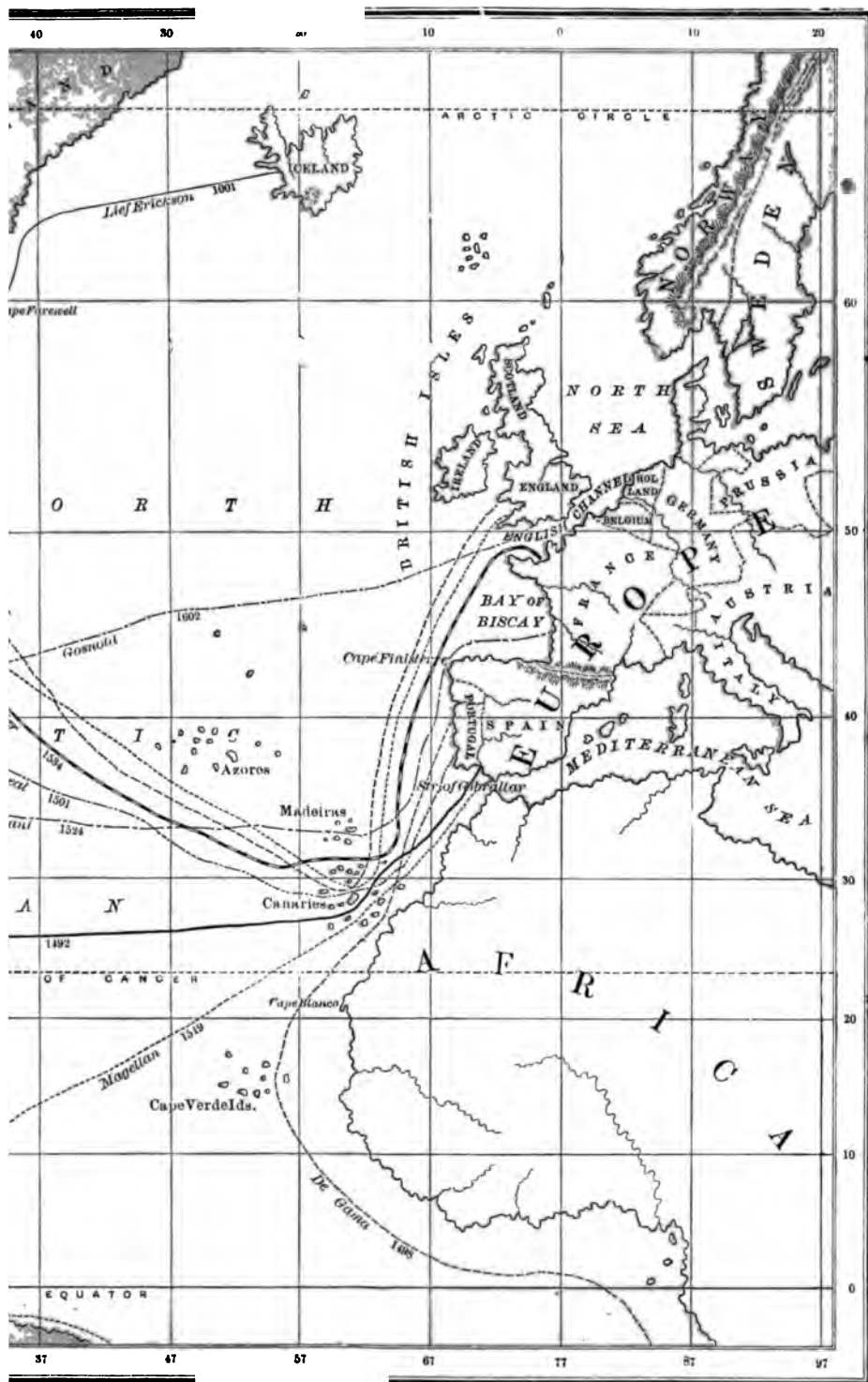
Champlain was a religious enthusiast, and on that account the development of his colony was for some time hindered. In 1612 the Protestant party came into power in France, and the great Condé, the protector of the Protestants, became viceroy of the French empire in America. Now, for the third time, Champlain came to New France, and the success of the colony at Quebec was fully assured. Franciscan monks came over and began to preach among the Indians. These friars and the Protestants quarreled a good deal, and the settlement was much disturbed. A second time Champlain went with a war-party against the Iroquois. His company was defeated, he himself wounded and obliged to remain all winter among the Hurons; but in the summer of 1617 he returned to the colony, in 1620 began to build, and four years afterward completed, the strong fortress of St. Louis. When the heavy bastions of this castle appeared on the high cliff above the town and river, the permanence of the French settlements in the valley of the St. Lawrence was no longer doubtful. To Samuel Champlain, more than to any other man—more than to the French government itself—the success of the North American colonies of France must be attributed.

CHAPTER VI.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

NO day in the early history of the New World was more important than the 5th of May, 1496. On that day Henry VII., king of England, signed the commission of JOHN CABOT of Venice to make discoveries and explorations in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, to carry the English flag, and to take possession of all islands and continents which he might discover. Cabot was a brave, adventurous man who had been a





sailor from his boyhood, and was now a wealthy merchant of Bristol. The autumn and winter were spent in preparations for the voyage; five substantial ships were fitted, crews were enlisted, and everything made ready for the opening of the spring. In April the fleet left Bristol; and on the morning of the 24th of June, at a point about the middle of the eastern coast of Labrador, the gloomy shore was seen. This was the real discovery of the American continent. Fourteen months elapsed before Columbus reached the coast of Guiana, and more than two years before Ojeda and Vespucci came in sight of the main land of South America.

Cabot explored the shore-line of the country which he had discovered for several hundred miles. He supposed that the land was a part of the dominions of the Cham of Tartary; but finding no inhabitants, he went on shore, according to the terms of his commission, planted the flag of England, and took possession in the name of the English king. No man forgets his native land; by the side of the flag of his adopted country Cabot set up the banner of the *republic* of Venice—auspicious emblem of another flag which should one day float from sea to sea.

As soon as he had satisfied himself of the extent and character of the country which he had discovered, Cabot sailed for England. On the homeward voyage he twice saw on the right hand the coast of Newfoundland, but did not stop for further discovery. After an absence of but little more than three months, he reached Bristol, and was greeted with great enthusiasm. The town had holiday, the people were wild about the discoveries of their favorite admiral, and the whole kingdom took up the note of rejoicing. The Crown gave him money and encouragement, new crews were enlisted, new ships fitted out, and a new commission more liberal in its provisions than the first was signed in February of 1498. Strange as it may seem, after the date of this second patent the very name of John Cabot disappears from the annals of the times. Where the remainder of his life was passed and the circumstances of his death are involved in complete mystery.

But Sebastian, second son of John Cabot, inherited his father's plans and reputation, and to his father's genius added a greater genius of his own. He had already been to the New World on that first famous voyage, and now, when the opportunity offered to conduct a voyage of his own, he threw himself into the enterprise with all the fervor of youth. It is probable that the very fleet which had been equipped for his father was entrusted to Sebastian. At any rate, the latter found himself, in the spring of 1498, in command of a squadron of well-manned vessels and on his way to the new continent. The particular object had in view was

that common folly of the times, the discovery of a north-west passage to the Indies.

The voyage continued prosperously until, in the ocean west of Greenland, the icebergs compelled Sebastian to change his course. It was July, and the sun scarcely set at midnight. Seals were seen and the ships ploughed through such shoals of codfish as had never before been heard of. The shore was reached not far from the scene of the elder Cabot's discoveries, and then the fleet turned southward, but whether across the Gulf of St. Lawrence or to the east of Newfoundland is uncertain. New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Maine were next explored. The whole coast-line of New England and of the Middle States was now for the first time since the days of the Norsemen traced by Europeans. Nor did Cabot desist from this work, which was bestowing the title of discovery on the crown of England, until he had passed beyond the Chesapeake. After all the disputes about the matter, it is most probable that Cape Hatteras is the point from which Sebastian began his homeward voyage.

The future career of Cabot was as strange as the voyages of his boyhood had been wonderful. The scheming, illiberal Henry VII., although quick to appreciate the value of Sebastian's discoveries, was slow to reward the discoverer. The Tudors were all dark-minded and selfish princes. When King Henry died, Ferdinand the Catholic enticed Cabot away from England and made him pilot-major of Spain. While holding this high office he had almost entire control of the maritime affairs of the kingdom, and sent out many successful voyages. He lived to be very old, but the circumstances of his death have not been ascertained, and his place of burial is unknown.

The year 1498 is the most marked in the whole history of discovery. In the month of May, VASCO DE GAMA of Portugal doubled the Cape of Good Hope and succeeded in reaching Hindostan. During the summer the younger Cabot traced the eastern coast of North America through more than twenty degrees of latitude, thus establishing for ever the claim of England to the most valuable portion of the New World. In August, Columbus himself, now sailing on his third voyage, reached the mouth of the Orinoco. Of the three great discoveries, that of Cabot has proved to be by far the most important.

But several causes impeded the career of English discovery during the greater part of the sixteenth century. The next year after the New World was found, the pope, Alexander the Sixth, drew an imaginary line north and south three hundred miles west of the Azores, and issued a papal bull giving all islands and countries west of that line to Spain. Henry VII. of England was himself a Catholic, and he did not care to

begin a conflict with his Church by pressing his own claims to the newly-found regions of the west. His son and successor, Henry VIII., at first adopted the same policy, and it was not until after the Reformation had been accomplished in England that the decision of the pope came to be disregarded, and finally despised and laughed at.

During the short reign of Edward VI. the spirit of maritime adventure was again aroused. In 1548 the king's council voted a hundred pounds sterling to induce the now aged Sebastian Cabot to return from Spain and become grand-pilot of England. The old admiral quitted Seville and once more sailed under the English flag. In the reign of Queen Mary the power of England on the sea was not materially extended, but with the accession of Elizabeth a wonderful impulse was given to all enterprises which promised the aggrandizement of her kingdom.

The spirit of discovery now reappeared in that bold and skillful sailor, MARTIN FROBISHER. Himself poor, Dudley, earl of Warwick, came to his aid, and fitted out three small vessels to sail in search of a north-west passage to Asia. Three-quarters of a century had not sufficed to destroy the fanatical notion of reaching the Indies by sailing around America to the north. One of Frobisher's ships was lost on the voyage, another, terrified at the prospect, returned to England, but in the third the dauntless captain proceeded to the north and west until he attained a higher latitude than had ever before been reached on the American coast. Above the sixtieth parallel he discovered the group of islands which lies in the mouth of Hudson's Strait. Still farther to the north he came upon a large island which he supposed to be the mainland of Asia; to this he gave the name of *Meta Incognita*. North of this island, in latitude sixty-three degrees and eight minutes, he entered the strait which has ever since borne the name of its discoverer, then sailed for England, carrying home with him one of the *Esquimaux* and a stone which was declared by the English refiners to contain gold.

London was greatly excited. Queen Elizabeth herself added a vessel to the new fleet which in the month of May, 1577, departed for *Meta Incognita* to gather the precious metal by the shipload. Coming among the icebergs, the ships were for weeks together in constant danger of being crushed to atoms between the floating mountains. The summer was unfavorable. No ships reached as high a point as Frobisher had attained by himself on the previous voyage. The mariners were in consternation at the gloomy perils around them, and availed themselves of the first opportunity to get out of these dangerous seas and return to England.

Were the English gold-hunters satisfied? Not at all. Fifteen new,

vessels were immediately fitted out, the queen again bearing part of the expense, and as soon as the spring of 1578 opened the third voyage was begun. This time a colony was to be planted in the gold-regions of the north. Three of the ships, loaded with emigrants, were to remain in the promised land. The other twelve were to be freighted with gold-ore and return to London. When they reached the entrance to Hudson's Strait, they encountered icebergs more terrible than ever. Through a thousand perils the vessels finally reached *Meta Incognita* and took on cargoes of dirt. The provision-ship now slipped away from the fleet and returned to England. Affairs grew desperate. The north-west passage was forgotten. The colony which was to be planted was no longer thought of. Faith in the shining earth which they had stored in the holds gave way, and so, with disappointed crews on board and several tons of the spurious ore under the hatches, the ships set sail for home. The *El Dorado* of the *Esquimaux* had proved an utter failure.

The English admiral, *SIR FRANCIS DRAKE*, sought fortune in a different manner. Without much regard for the law of nations, he began, in the year 1572, to prey upon the merchant-ships of Spain, and gained thereby enormous wealth. Five years later he sailed around to the Pacific coast by the route which *Magellan* had discovered, and became a terror to the Spanish vessels in those waters. When he had thus sufficiently enriched himself by a process not very different from piracy, he formed the daring project of tracing up the western coast of North America until he should enter the north-west passage from the Pacific, and thence sail eastward around the continent. With this object in view, he sailed northward along the coast as far as Oregon, when his sailors, who had been for several years within the tropics, began to shiver with the cold, and the enterprise, which could have resulted in nothing but disaster, was given up. Returning to the south, Drake passed the winter of 1579-80 in a harbor on the coast of Mexico. To all that portion of the western shores of America which he had thus explored he gave the name of *New Albion*; but the earlier discovery of the same coast by the Spaniards rendered the English claim of but little value. No colony of Englishmen had yet been established in the New World.

SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT was perhaps the first to conceive a rational plan of colonization in America. His idea was to form somewhere on the shores of the New Continent an agricultural and commercial state. With this purpose he sought aid from the queen, and received a liberal patent authorizing him to take possession of any six hundred square miles of unoccupied territory in America, and to plant thereon a colony of which he himself should be proprietor and governor. With this commission,

Gilbert, assisted by his illustrious step-brother, WALTER RALEIGH, prepared a fleet of five vessels, and in June of 1583 sailed for the west. Only two days after their departure the best vessel in the fleet treacherously abandoned the rest and returned to Plymouth. Early in August, Gilbert reached Newfoundland, and going ashore, took formal possession of the country in the name of his queen. Unfortunately, some of the sailors discovered in the side of a hill scales of mica, and a judge of metals, whom Gilbert had been foolish enough to bring with him, declared that the glittering mineral was silver ore. The crews became insubordinate. Some went to digging the supposed silver and carrying it on board the vessels, while others gratified their piratical propensities by attacking the Spanish and Portuguese ships that were fishing in the neighboring harbors.

Meanwhile, one of Gilbert's vessels became worthless, and had to be abandoned. With the other three he left Newfoundland, and steered toward the south. When off the coast of Massachusetts, the largest of the remaining ships was wrecked, and a hundred men, with all the spurious silver ore, went to the bottom. The disaster was so great that Gilbert determined to return at once to England. The weather was stormy, and the two ships that were now left were utterly unfit for the sea; but the voyage was begun in hope. The brave captain remained in the weaker vessel, a little frigate called the *Squirrel*, already shattered and ready to sink. At midnight, as the ships, within hailing distance of each other, were struggling through a raging sea, the *Squirrel* was suddenly engulfed; not a man of the courageous crew was saved. The other ship finally reached Falmouth in safety.

But the project of colonization was immediately renewed by Raleigh. In the following spring that remarkable man obtained from the queen a new patent fully as liberal as the one granted to Gilbert. Raleigh was to become lord-proprietor of an extensive tract of country in America extending from the thirty-third to the fortieth parallel of north latitude. This territory was to be peopled and organized into a state. The frozen regions of the north were now to be avoided, and the sunny country of the Huguenots was to be chosen as the seat of the rising empire. Two ships were fitted out, and the command given to Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow.

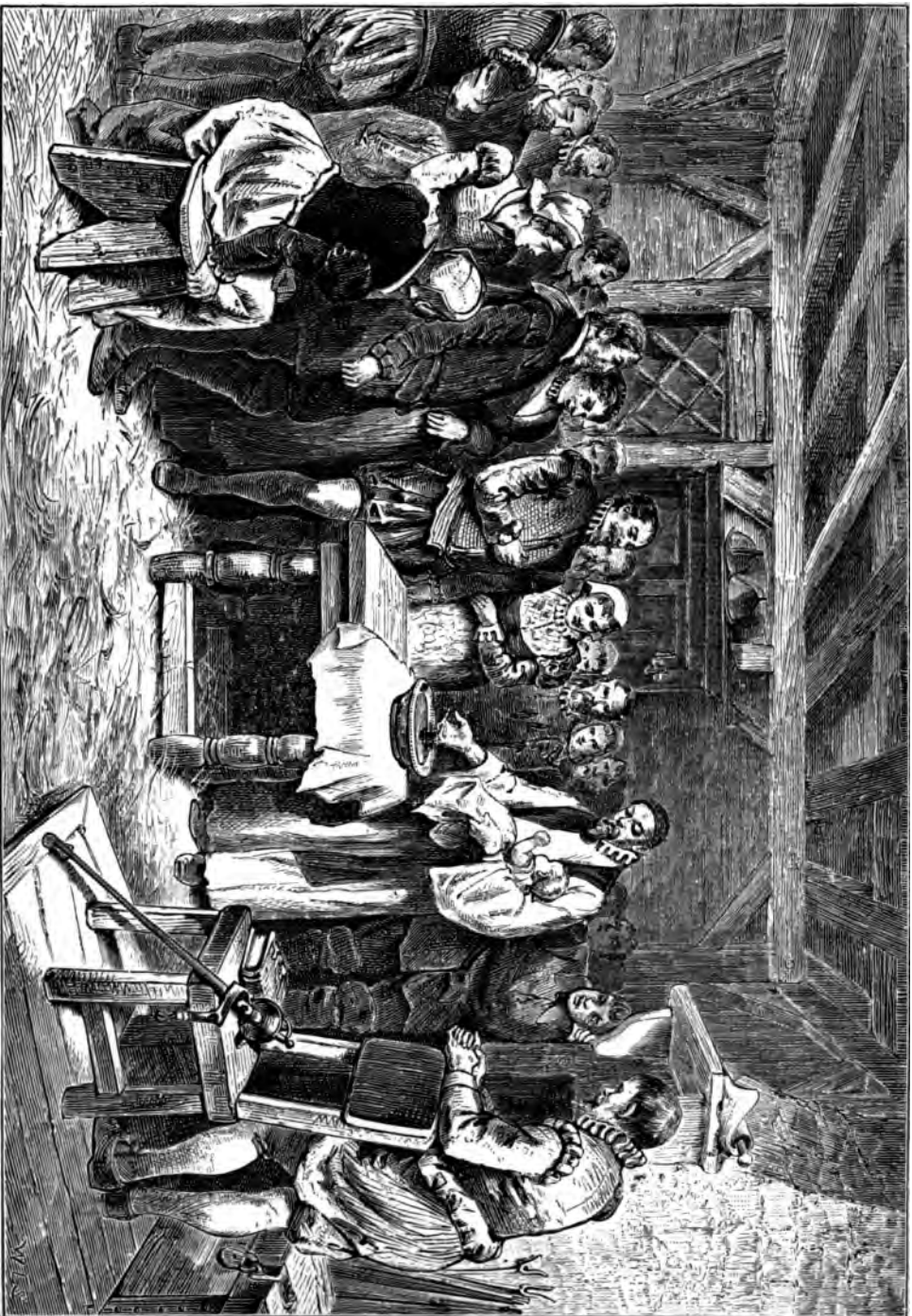
In the month of July the vessels reached the coast of Carolina. The sea that laved the long, low beach was smooth and glassy. The woods were full of beauty and song. The natives were generous and hospitable. Explorations were made along the shores of Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, and a landing finally effected on Roanoke Island, where

the English were entertained by the Indian queen. But neither Amidas nor Barlow had the courage or genius necessary to such an enterprise. After a stay of less than two months they returned to England to exhaust the rhetoric of description in praising the beauties of the new land. In allusion to her own life and reign, Elizabeth gave to her delightful country in the New World the name of VIRGINIA.

In December of 1584, Sir Walter brought forward a bill in Parliament by which his previous patent was confirmed and enlarged. The mind of the whole nation was inflamed at the prospects which Raleigh's province now offered to emigrants and adventurers. The plan of colonization, so far from being abandoned, was undertaken with renewed zeal and earnestness. The proprietor fitted out a second expedition, and appointed the soldierly Ralph Lane governor of the colony. Sir Richard Grenville commanded the fleet, and a company, not unmixed with the gallant young nobility of the kingdom, made up the crew. Sailing from Plymouth, the fleet of seven vessels reached the American coast on the 20th of June. At Cape Fear they were in imminent danger of being wrecked; but having escaped the peril, they six days afterward reached Roanoke in safety. Here Lane was left with a hundred and ten of the emigrants to form a settlement. Grenville, after making a few unsatisfactory explorations, returned to England, taking with him a Spanish treasure-ship which he had captured. Privateering and colonization went hand in hand.

Meanwhile, some Indians of a village adjacent to Roanoke had committed a petty theft, and the English wantonly burned the whole town as a measure of revenge. Jealousy and suspicion took the place of former friendships. Lane and some of his companions were enticed with false stories to go on a gold-hunting expedition into the interior; their destruction was planned, and only avoided by a hasty retreat to Roanoke. Wingina, the Indian king, and several of his chiefs were now in turn allured into the power of the English and inhumanly murdered. Hatred and gloom followed this atrocity, then despondency and a sense of danger, until the discouragement became so great that when Sir Francis Drake, returning with a fleet from his exploits on the Pacific coast, came in sight, the colonists prevailed on him to carry them back to England.

It was a needless and hasty abandonment, for within a few days a shipload of stores arrived from the prudent Raleigh; but finding no colony, the vessel could do nothing but return. Two weeks later Sir Richard Grenville himself came back to Roanoke with three well-laden ships, and made a fruitless search for the colonists. Not to lose possession of the country altogether, he left fifteen men upon the island, and set sail for home.



BAPTISM OF VIRGINIA DARE.

The ardor of the English people was now somewhat cooled. Yet they had before them truthful descriptions of the beauty and magnificence of the new country, and another colony, consisting largely of families, was easily made up. A charter of municipal government was granted by the proprietor, John White was chosen governor, and every precaution taken to secure the permanent success of the City of Raleigh, soon to be founded in the west. In July the emigrants arrived in Carolina. Avoiding the dangerous capes of Hatteras and Fear, they came safely to Roanoke; but a search for the fifteen men who had been left there a year before only revealed the fact that the natives, now grown savage, had murdered them. Nevertheless, the northern extremity of the ill-omened island was chosen as the site for the city, and on the 23d of the month the foundations were laid.

But disaster attended the enterprise. Jealousy between the settlers and the Indians grew into hostility, and hostility into war. Then a peace was concluded, and Sir Walter gave countenance to an absurd performance by which Manteo, one of the Indian chiefs, was made a peer of England, with the title of Lord of Roanoke. It was a silly and stupid piece of business. Notwithstanding the presence of this copper-colored nobleman, the colonists were apprehensive and gloomy. They pretended to fear starvation, and in the latter part of August almost compelled Governor White to return to England for an additional cargo of supplies. It was a great mistake. If White had remained, and the settlers had given themselves to tilling the soil and building houses, no further help would have been needed. The 18th of August was marked as the birthday of Virginia Dare, the first-born of English children in the New World. When White set sail for England, he left behind him a colony of a hundred and eight persons. What their fate was has never been ascertained. The story of their going ashore and joining the Indians is unlikely in itself, and has no historical evidence to support it.

The Invincible Armada was now bearing down upon the coasts of England. All the resources and energies of the kingdom were demanded for defence; and although Raleigh managed to send out two supply-ships to succor his starving colony, his efforts to reach them were unavailing. The vessels which he sent with stores went cruising after Spanish merchantmen, and were themselves run down and captured by a man-of-war. Not until the spring of 1590 did the governor finally return to search for the unfortunate colonists. The island was a desert, tenantless and silent. No soul remained to tell the story of the lost.

In the mean time, Sir Walter, after spending two hundred thousand dollars of his own means in the attempt to found and foster a colony,

had given up the enterprise. He assigned his exclusive proprietary rights to an association of London merchants, and it was under their auspices that White had made the final search for the settlers of Roanoke. From the date of this event very little in the way of voyage and discovery was accomplished by the English until the year 1602, when maritime enterprise again brought the flag of England to the shores of America. **BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD** was the man to whom belongs the honor of making the next explorations of our coast.

The old route from the shores of Europe to America was very circuitous. Ships from the ports of England, France and Spain sailed first southward to the Canary Islands, thence to the West Indies, and thence northward to the coast-line of the continent. Abandoning this path as unnecessarily long and out of the way, Gosnold, in a single small vessel called the *Concord*, sailed directly across the Atlantic, and in seven weeks reached the coast of Maine. The distance thus gained was fully two thousand miles. It was Gosnold's object to found a colony, and for that purpose a company of emigrants came with him. Beginning at Cape Elizabeth, explorations were made to the southward; Cape Cod was reached, and here the captain, with four of his men, went on shore. It was the first landing of Englishmen within the limits of New England. Cape Malabar was doubled, and then the vessel, leaving Nantucket on the right, turned into Buzzard's Bay. Selecting the most westerly island of the Elizabeth group, the colonists went on shore, and there began the first New England settlement.

It was a short-lived enterprise. A traffic was opened with the natives which resulted in loading the *Concord* with sassafras root, so much esteemed for its fragrance and healing virtues. Everything went well for a season; but when the ship was about to depart for England, the settlers became alarmed at the prospect before them, and pleaded for permission to return with their friends. Gosnold acceded to their demands, and the island was abandoned. After a pleasant voyage of five weeks, and in less than four months from the time of starting, the *Concord* reached home in safety.

Gosnold and his companions gave glowing accounts of the country which they had visited, and it was not long until another English expedition to America was planned. Two vessels, the *Speedwell* and the *Discoverer*, composed the fleet, with **MARTIN PRING** for commander. A cargo of merchandise suited to the tastes of the Indians was put into the holds; and in April of 1603, a few days after the death of Queen Elizabeth, the vessels sailed for America. They came safely to Penobscot Bay, and afterward spent some time in exploring the harbors and shores

of Maine. Then, turning to the south and coasting Massachusetts, Pring reached the sassafras region, and loaded his vessels at Martha's Vineyard. Thence he returned to England, reaching Bristol in October, after an absence of six months.

Two years later, GEORGE WAYMOUTH, under the patronage of the earl of Southampton, made a voyage to America, and passing Cape Cod on the left, came to anchorage among the islands of St. George, on the coast of Maine. He explored the harbor, and sailed up the river for a considerable distance, taking note of the fine forests of fir and of the beautiful scenery along the banks. A profitable trade was opened with the Indians, some of whom learned to speak English and returned with Weymouth to England. The voyage homeward was safely made, the vessels reaching Plymouth about the middle of June. This was the last of the voyages made by the English preparatory to the actual establishment of a colony in America. The time had at last arrived when, in the beautiful country of the Chesapeake, a permanent settlement should be effected.

CHAPTER VII.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.—CONTINUED.

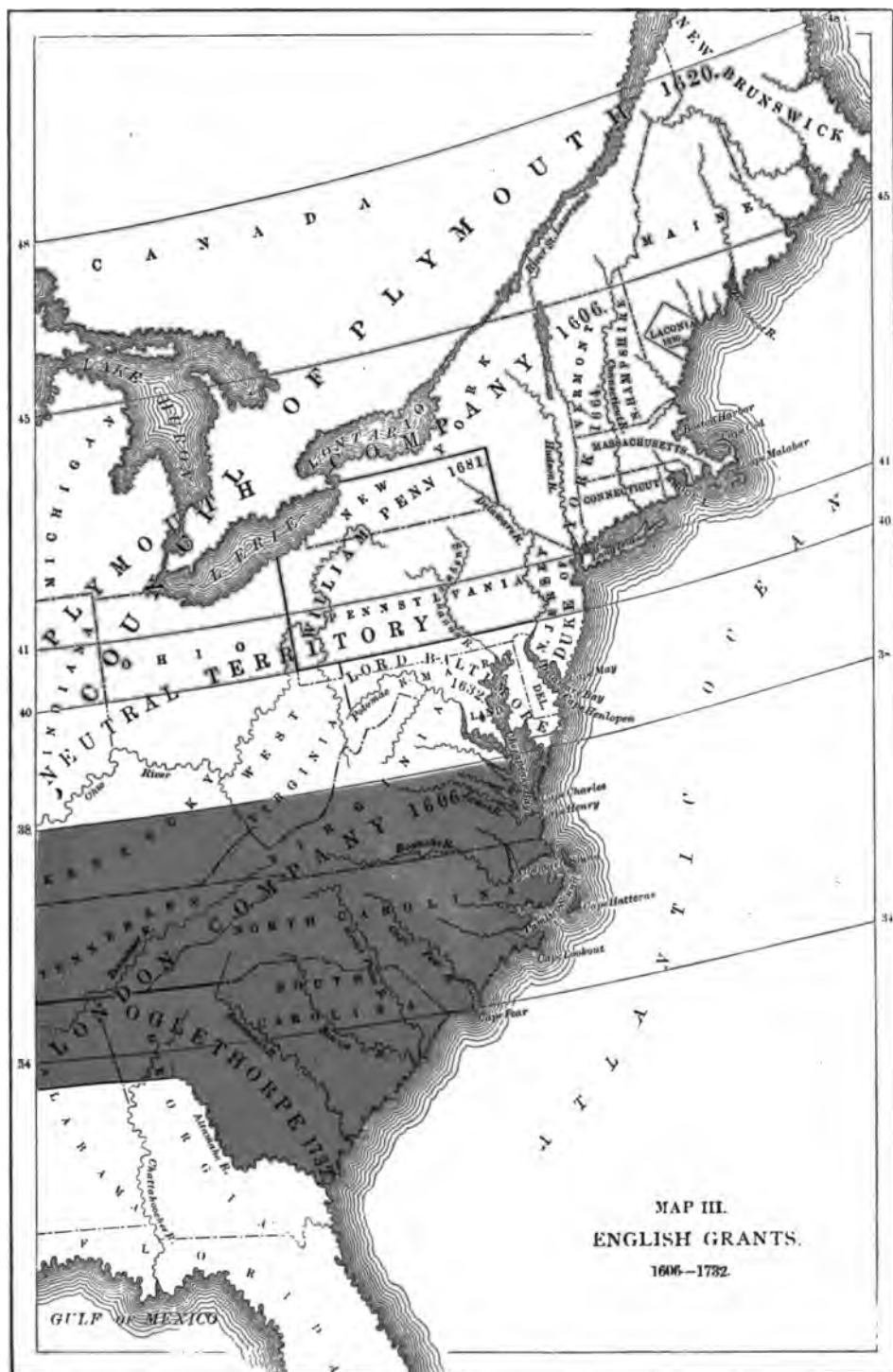
THE 10th of April, 1606, was full of fate in the destinies of the western continent. On that day King James I. issued two great patents directed to men of his kingdom, authorizing them to possess and colonize all that portion of North America lying between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth parallels of latitude. The immense tract thus embraced extended from the mouth of Cape Fear River to Passamaquoddy Bay, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. The first patent was granted to an association of nobles, gentlemen and merchants residing at London, and called the LONDON COMPANY, while the second instrument was issued to a similar body which had been organized at Plymouth, in South-western England, and which bore the name of the PLYMOUTH COMPANY. To the former corporation was assigned all the region between the thirty-fourth and the thirty-eighth degrees of latitude, and to the latter the tract extending from the forty-first to the forty-fifth degree. The narrow belt of three degrees lying between the thirty-eighth and forty-first parallels was to be equally open to the colonies of either company, but no settle-

ment of one party was to be made within less than one hundred miles of the nearest settlement of the other. The nature and extent of these grants will be fully understood from an examination of the accompanying map. Only the London Company was successful under its charter in planting an American colony.

The man who was chiefly instrumental in organizing the London Company was Bartholomew Gosnold. His leading associates were Edward Wingfield, a rich merchant, Robert Hunt, a clergyman, and John Smith, a man of genius. Others who aided the enterprise were Sir John Popham, chief-justice of England, Richard Hakluyt, a historian, and Sir Ferdinand Gorges, a distinguished nobleman. By the terms of the charter, the affairs of the company were to be administered by a Superior Council, residing in England, and an Inferior Council, residing in the colony. The members of the former body were to be chosen by the king, and to hold office at his pleasure; the members of the lower council were also selected by the royal direction, and were subject to removal by the same power. All legislative authority was likewise vested in the monarch. In the first organization of the companies not a single principle of self-government was admitted. The most foolish clause in the patent was that which required the proposed colony or colonies to hold all property in common for a period of five years. The wisest provision in the instrument was that which allowed the emigrants to retain in the New World all the rights and privileges of Englishmen.

In the month of August, 1606, the Plymouth Company sent their first ship to America. The voyage, which was one of exploration, was but half completed, when the company's vessel was captured by a Spanish man-of-war. In the autumn another ship was sent out, which remained on the American coast until the following spring, and then returned with glowing accounts of the country. Encouraged by these reports, the company, in the summer of 1607, despatched a colony of a hundred persons. Arriving at the mouth of the River Kennebec, the colonists began a settlement under favorable circumstances. Some fortifications were thrown up, a storehouse and several cabins built, and the place named St. George. Then the ships returned to England, leaving a promising colony of forty-five members; but the winter of 1607-8 was very severe; some of the settlers were starved and some frozen, the storehouse burned, and when summer came the remnant escaped to England.

The London Company had better fortune. A fleet of three vessels was fitted out, and the command given to Christopher Newport. On the 9th of December the ships, having on board a hundred and five colonists,



MAP III.
ENGLISH GRANTS.
1606-1782.

among whom were Wingfield and Smith, left England. Newport, to begin with, committed the astonishing folly of taking the old route by way of the Canaries and the West Indies, and did not reach the American coast until the month of April. It was the design that a landing should be made in the neighborhood of Roanoke Island, but a storm prevailed and carried the ships northward into the Chesapeake. Entering the magnificent bay and coasting along the southern shore, the vessels came to the mouth of a broad and beautiful river, which was named in honor of King James. Proceeding up this stream about fifty miles, Newport noticed on the northern bank a peninsula more attractive than the rest for its verdure and beauty; the ships were moored, and the emigrants went on shore. Here, on the 13th day of May (Old Style), in the year 1607, were laid the foundations of Jamestown, the oldest English settlement in America. It was within a month of a hundred and ten years after the discovery of the continent by the elder Cabot, and nearly forty-two years after the founding of St. Augustine. So long a time had been required to plant the first feeble germ of English civilization in the New World.

After the unsuccessful attempt to form a settlement at the mouth of the Kennebec, very little was done by the Plymouth Company for several years; yet the purpose of planting colonies was not relinquished. Meanwhile, a new impetus was given to the affairs of North Virginia by the ceaseless activity and exhaustless energies of John Smith. Wounded by an accident, and discouraged, as far as it was possible for such a man to be discouraged, by the distractions and turbulence of the Jamestown colony, Smith left that settlement in 1609, and returned to England. On recovering his health he formed a partnership with four wealthy merchants of London, with a view to the fur-trade and probable establishment of colonies within the limits of the Plymouth grant. Two ships were accordingly freighted with goods and put under Smith's command. The summer of 1614 was spent on the coast of lower Maine, where a profitable traffic was carried on with the Indians. The crews of the vessels were well satisfied through the long days of July with the pleasures and profits of the teeming fisheries, but Smith himself found nobler work. Beginning as far north as practicable, he patiently explored the country, and drew a map of the whole coast-line from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod. In this map, which is still extant, and a marvel of accuracy considering the circumstances under which it was made, the country was called *NEW ENGLAND*—a name which Prince Charles confirmed, and which has ever since remained as the designation of the North-eastern States of the republic. In the month of November the ships re-

turned to Plymouth, taking with them many substantial proofs of a successful voyage.

Smith now pleaded more strongly than ever in behalf of colonization. Some of his friends in the Plymouth Company gave him aid, and in 1615 a small colony of sixteen persons was sent out in a single ship. When nearing the American coast, they encountered a terrible storm, and after being driven about for two or three weeks were obliged to return to England. In spite of these reverses, the undaunted leader renewed the enterprise, and again raised a company of emigrants. Part of his crew became mutinous, betrayed him, and left him in mid-ocean. His own ship was run down and captured by a band of French pirates, and himself imprisoned in the harbor of Rochelle. Later in the same year he escaped in an open boat and made his way back to London. With astonishing industry, he now published a description of New England, and was more zealous than ever in inciting the company of Plymouth to energetic action. In these efforts he was much impeded. The London Company was jealous of its rival, and put obstacles in the way of every enterprise. The whole of the years 1617-18 was spent in making and unmaking plans of colonization, until finally, on the petition of some of its own leading members, the Plymouth Company was formally superseded by a new corporation called the COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH, consisting of forty of the most wealthy and influential men of the kingdom. On this body were conferred, by the terms of the new charter, almost unlimited powers and privileges. All that part of America lying between the fortieth and the forty-eighth parallels of north latitude, and extending from ocean to ocean, was given to the council in fee simple. More than a million of square miles were embraced in the grant, and absolute jurisdiction over this immense tract was committed to forty men. How King James was ever induced to sign such a charter has remained an unsolved mystery.

A plan of colonizing was now projected on a grand scale. John Smith was appointed admiral of New England for life. The king, notwithstanding the opposition of the House of Commons, issued a proclamation enforcing the provisions of the charter, and everything gave promise of the early settlement of America. Such were the schemes of men to possess and people the Western Continent. Meanwhile, a Power higher than the will of man was working in the same direction. The time had come when, without the knowledge or consent of James I., without the knowledge or consent of the Council of Plymouth, a permanent settlement should be made on the bleak shores of New England.

The PURITANS! Name of all names in the early history of the

West! About the close of the sixteenth century a number of poor dissenters scattered through the North of England, especially in the counties of Nottingham, Lincoln and York, began to join themselves together for the purposes of free religious worship. Politically, they were patriotic subjects of the English king; religiously, they were rebels against the authority of the English Church. Their rebellion, however, only extended to the declaration that every man has a right to discover and apply the truth as revealed in the Scriptures without the interposition of any power other than his own reason and conscience. Such a doctrine was very repugnant to the Church of England. Queen Elizabeth herself declared such teaching to be subversive of the principles on which her monarchy was founded. King James was not more tolerant; and from time to time violent persecutions broke out against the feeble and dispersed Christians of the north.

Despairing of rest in their own country, the Puritans finally determined to go into exile, and to seek in another land the freedom of worship which their own had denied them. They turned their faces toward Holland, made one unsuccessful attempt to get away, were brought back and thrown into prisons. Again they gathered together on a bleak heath in Lincolnshire, and in the spring of 1608 embarked from the mouth of the Humber. Their ship brought them in safety to Amsterdam, where, under the care of their heroic pastor, John Robinson, they passed one winter, and then removed to Leyden. Such was the beginning of their wandering. They took the name of PILGRIMS, and grew content to have no home or resting-place. Privation and exile could be endured when sweetened with liberty.

But the love of native land is a universal passion. The Puritans in Holland did not forget—could not forget—that they were Englishmen. During their ten years of residence at Leyden they did not cease to long for a return to the country which had cast them out. Though ruled by a heartless monarch and a bigoted priesthood, England was their country still. The unfamiliar language of the Dutch grated harshly on their ears. They pined with unrest, conscious of their ability and willingness to do something which should convince even King James of their patriotism and worth.

It was in this condition of mind that about the year 1617 the Puritans began to meditate a removal to the wilds of the New World. There, with honest purpose and prudent zeal, they would extend the dominions of the English king. They would forget the past, and be at peace with their country. Accordingly, John Carver and Robert Cushman were despatched to England to ask permission for the church of

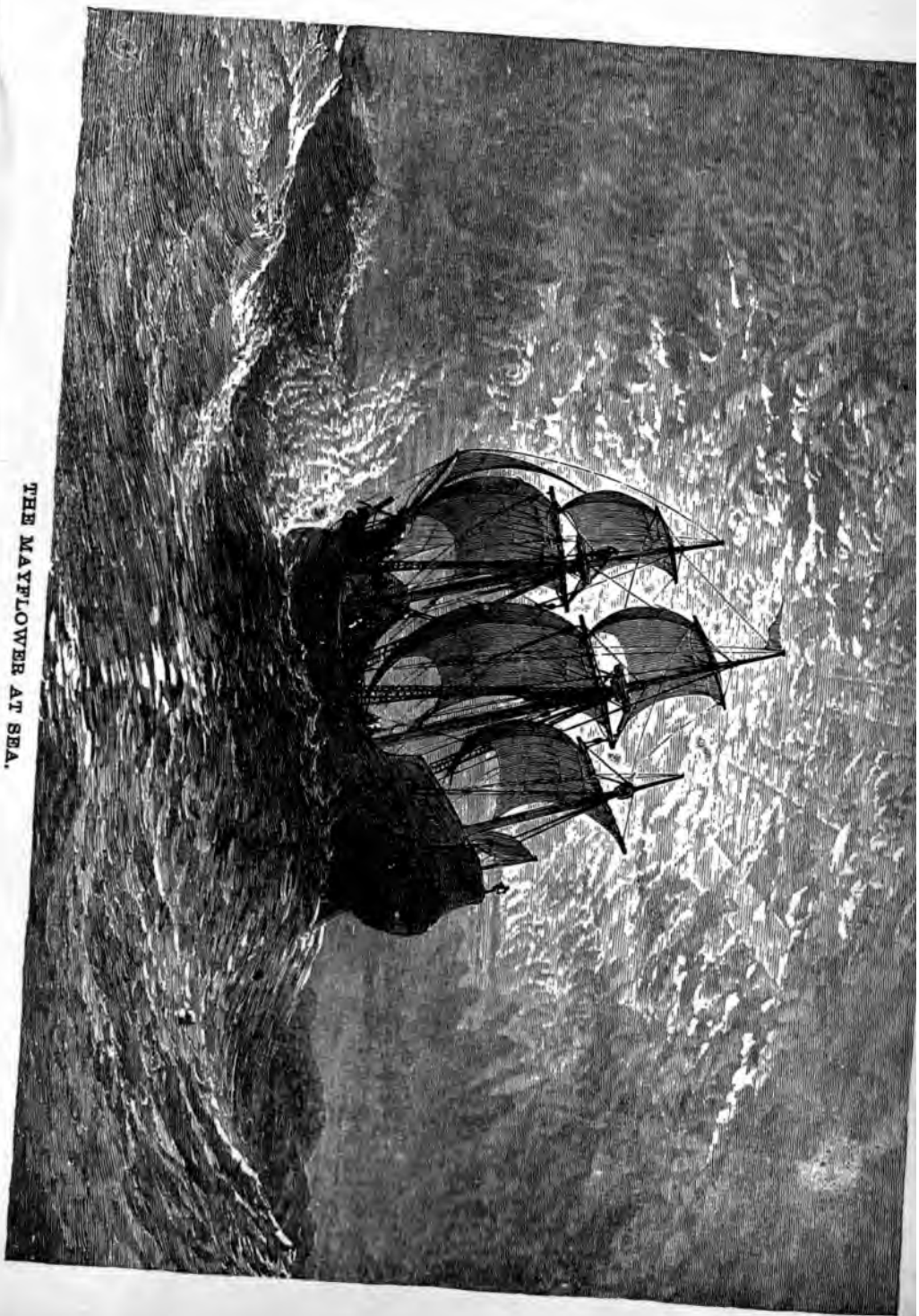
Leyden to settle in America. The agents of the London Company and the Council of Plymouth gave some encouragement to the request, but the king and his ministers, especially Lord Bacon, set their faces against any project which might seem to favor heretics. The most that King James would do was to make an informal promise to let the Pilgrims alone in America. Such has always been the despicable attitude of bigotry toward every liberal enterprise.

The Puritans were not discouraged. With or without permission, protected or not protected by the terms of a charter which might at best be violated, they would seek asylum and rest in the Western wilderness. Out of their own resources, and with the help of a few faithful friends, they provided the scanty means of departure and set their faces toward the sea. The *Speedwell*, a small vessel of sixty tons, was purchased at Amsterdam, and the *Mayflower*, a larger and more substantial ship, was hired for the voyage. The former was to carry the emigrants from Leyden to Southampton, where they were to be joined by the *Mayflower*, with another company from London. Assembling at the harbor of Delft, on the River Meuse, fifteen miles south of Leyden, as many of the Pilgrims as could be accommodated went on board the *Speedwell*. The whole congregation accompanied them to the shore. There Robinson gave them a consoling farewell address, and the blessings and prayers of those who were left behind followed the vessel out of sight.

Both ships came safely to Southampton, and within two weeks the emigrants were ready for the voyage. On the 5th of August, 1620, the vessels left the harbor; but after a few days' sailing the *Speedwell* was found to be shattered, old and leaky. On this account both ships anchored in the port of Dartmouth, and eight days were spent in making the needed repairs. Again the sails were set; but scarcely had the land receded from sight before the captain of the *Speedwell* declared his vessel unfit to breast the ocean, and then, to the great grief and discouragement of the emigrants, put back to Plymouth. Here the bad ship was abandoned; but the Pilgrims were encouraged and feasted by the citizens, and the more zealous went on board the *Mayflower*, ready and anxious for a final effort. On the 6th day of September the first colony of New England, numbering one hundred and two souls, saw the shores of Old England grow dim and sink behind the sea.

The voyage was long and perilous. For sixty-three days the ship was buffeted by storms and driven. It had been the intention of the Pilgrims to found their colony in the beautiful country of the Hudson; but the tempest carried them out of their course, and the first land seen was the desolate Cape Cod. On the 9th of November the vessel was

THE MAYFLOWER AT SEA.



anchored in the bay; then a meeting was held on board and the colony organized under a solemn compact. In the charter which they there made for themselves the emigrants declared their loyalty to the English Crown, and covenanted together to live in peace and harmony, with equal rights to all, obedient to just laws made for the common good. Such was the simple but sublime constitution of the oldest New England State. A nobler document is not to be found among the records of the world.* To this instrument all the heads of families, forty-one in number, solemnly set their names. An election was held in which all had an equal voice, and John Carver was unanimously chosen governor of the colony.

After two days the boat was lowered, but was found to be half rotten and useless. More than a fortnight of precious time was required to make the needed repairs. Standish, Bradford and a few other hardy spirits got to shore and explored the country; nothing was found but a heap of Indian corn under the snow. By the 6th of December the boat was ready for service, and the governor, with fifteen companions, went ashore. The weather was dreadful. Alternate rains and snow-storms converted the clothes of the Pilgrims into coats-of-mail. All day they wandered about, and then returned to the sea-shore. In the morning they were attacked by the Indians, but escaped to the ship with their lives, cheerful and giving thanks. Then the vessel was steered to the south and west for forty-five miles around the coast of what is now the county of Barnstable. At nightfall of Saturday a storm came on; the rudder was wrenched away, and the poor ship driven, half by accident and half by the skill of the pilot, into a safe haven on the west side of the bay. The next day, being the Sabbath, was spent in religious devotions, and on Monday, the 11th of December, Old Style, 1620, the Pilgrim Fathers landed on the Rock of Plymouth. ✓

It was now the dead of winter. There was an incessant storm of sleet and snow, and the houseless immigrants, already enfeebled by their sufferings, fell a-dying of hunger, cold and exposure. After a few days spent in explorations about the coast, a site was selected near the first landing, some trees were felled, the snow-drifts cleared away, and on the 9th of January the heroic toilers began to build New Plymouth. Every man took on himself the work of making his own house; but the ravages of disease grew daily worse, strong arms fell powerless, lung-fevers and consumptions wasted every family. At one time only seven men were able to work on the sheds which were building for shelter from the storms; and if an early spring had not brought relief, the colony must have perished to a man. Such were the privations and griefs of that terrible winter when New England began to be.

* See Appendix, note B.

CHAPTER VIII.

VOYAGES AND SETTLEMENTS OF THE DUTCH.

THE first Dutch settlement in America was made on Manhattan or New York Island. The colony resulted from the voyages and explorations of the illustrious SIR HENRY HUDSON. In the year 1607 this great British seaman was employed by a company of London merchants to sail into the North Atlantic and discover a route eastward or westward to the Indies. He made the voyage in a single ship, passed up the eastern coast of Greenland to a higher point of latitude than ever before attained, turned eastward to Spitzbergen, circumnavigated that island, and then was compelled by the icebergs to return to England. In the next year he renewed his efforts, hoping to find between Spitzbergen and Nova Zembla an open way to the East. By this course he confidently expected to shorten the route to China by at least eight thousand miles. Again the voyage resulted in failure; his employers gave up the enterprise in despair, but his own spirits only rose to a higher determination. When the cautious merchants would furnish no more means, he quitted England and went to Amsterdam. Holland was at this time the foremost maritime nation of the world, and the eminent navigator did not long go begging for patronage in the busy marts of that country. The Dutch East India Company at once furnished him with a ship, a small yacht called the Half Moon, and in April of 1609 he set out on his third voyage to reach the Indies. About the seventy-second parallel of latitude, above the capes of Norway, he turned eastward, but between Lapland and Nova Zembla the ocean was filled with icebergs, and further sailing was impossible. Baffled but not discouraged, he immediately turned his prow toward the shores of America; somewhere between the Chesapeake and the North Pole he would find a passage into the Pacific ocean.

In the month of July Hudson reached Newfoundland, and passing to the coast of Maine, spent some time in repairing his ship, which had been shattered in a storm. Sailing thence southward, he touched at Cape Cod, and by the middle of August found himself as far south as the Chesapeake. Again he turned to the north, determined to examine the coast more closely, and on the 28th of the month anchored in Delaware

Bay. After one day's explorations the voyage was continued along the coast of New Jersey, until, on the 3d of September, the Half Moon came to a safe anchorage in the bay of Sandy Hook. Two days later a landing was effected, the natives flocking in great numbers to the scene, and bringing gifts of corn, wild fruits and oysters. The time until the 9th of the month was spent in sounding the great harbor; on the next day the vessel passed the Narrows, and then entered the noble river which bears the name of Hudson.

To explore the beautiful stream was now the pleasing task. For eight days the Half Moon sailed northward up the river. Such magnificent forests, such beautiful hills, such mountains rising in the distance, such fertile valleys, planted here and there with ripening corn, the Netherlanders had never seen before. On the 19th of September the vessel was moored at what is now the landing of Kinderhook; but an exploring party, still unsatisfied, took to the boats and rowed up the river beyond the site of Albany. After some days they returned to the ship, the moorings were loosed, the vessel dropped down the stream, and on the 4th of October the sails were spread for Holland. On the homeward voyage Hudson, not perhaps without a touch of national pride, put into the harbor of Dartmouth. Thereupon the government of King James, with characteristic illiberality, detained the Half Moon, and claimed the crew as Englishmen. All that Hudson could do was to forward to his employers of the East India Company an account of his successful voyage and of the delightful country which he had visited under the flag of Holland.

Now were the English merchants ready to spend more money to find the north-west passage. In the summer of 1610, a ship, called the Discovery, was given to Hudson; and with a vision of the Indies flitting before his imagination he left England, never to return. He had learned by this time that nowhere between Florida and Maine was there an opening through the continent to the Pacific. The famous pass must now be sought between the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the southern point of Greenland. Steering between Cape Farewell and Labrador, in the track which Frobisher had taken, the vessel came, on the 2d day of August, into the mouth of the strait which bears the name of its discoverer. No ship had ever before entered these waters. For a while the way westward was barred with islands; but passing between them, the bay seemed to open, the ocean widened to the right and left, and the route to China was at last revealed. So believed the great captain and his crew; but sailing farther to the west, the inhospitable shores narrowed on the more inhospitable sea, and Hudson found himself environed with the terrors of winter in the frozen gulf of the North. With unfaltering courage he

bore up until his provisions were almost exhausted ; spring was at hand, and the day of escape had already arrived, when the treacherous crew broke out in mutiny. They seized Hudson and his only son, with seven other faithful sailors, threw them into an open shallop, and cast them off among the icebergs. The fate of the illustrious mariner has never been ascertained.

In the summer of 1610 the Half Moon was liberated at Dartmouth, and returned to Amsterdam. In the same year several ships owned by Dutch merchants sailed to the banks of the Hudson River and engaged in the fur-trade. The traffic was very lucrative, and in the two following years other vessels made frequent and profitable voyages. Early in 1614 an act was passed by the States-General of Holland giving to certain merchants of Amsterdam the exclusive right to trade and establish settlements within the limits of the country explored by Hudson. Under this commission a fleet of five small trading-vessels arrived in the summer of the same year at Manhattan Island. Here some rude huts had already been built by former traders, but now a fort for the defence of the place was erected, and the settlement named New Amsterdam. In the course of the autumn Adrian Block, who commanded one of the ships, sailed through East River into Long Island Sound, made explorations along the coast as far as the mouth of the Connecticut, thence to Narraganset Bay, and even to Cape Cod. Almost at the same time Christianson, another Dutch commander, in the same fleet, sailed up the river from Manhattan to Castle Island, a short distance below the site of Albany, and erected a block-house, which was named Fort Nassau, for a long time the northern outpost of the settlers on the Hudson. Meanwhile, Cornelius May, the captain of a small vessel called the Fortune, sailed from New Amsterdam and explored the Jersey coast as far south as the Bay of Delaware. Upon these two voyages, one north and the other south from Manhattan Island where the actual settlement was made, Holland set up a feeble claim to the country which was now named NEW NETHERLANDS, extending from Cape Henlopen to Cape Cod—a claim which Great Britain and France treated with derision and contempt. Such were the feeble and inauspicious beginnings of the Dutch colonies in New York and Jersey.

PART III.

COLONIAL HISTORY

A. D. 1607—1775.

PARENT COLONIES.

CHAPTER IX.

VIRGINIA.—THE FIRST CHARTER.

MANY circumstances impeded the progress of the oldest Virginia colony. The first settlers at Jamestown were idle, improvident, dissolute. Of the one hundred and five men who came with Newport in the spring of 1607, only twelve were common laborers. There were four carpenters in the company, and six or eight masons and blacksmiths, but the lack of mechanics was compensated by a long list of forty-eight gentlemen. If necessity had not soon driven these to the honorable vocations of toil, the colony must have perished. The few married men who joined the expedition had left their families in England. The prospect of planting an American State on the banks of James River was not at all encouraging.

From the first the affairs of the colony were badly managed. King James made out instructions for the organization of the new State, and then, with his usual stupidity, sealed up the parchment in a box which was not to be opened until the arrival of the emigrants in America. The names of the governor and members of the council were thus unknown during the voyage; there was no legitimate authority on shipboard; insubordination and anarchy prevailed among the riotous company. In this state of turbulence and misrule, an absurd suspicion was blown out against Captain John Smith, the best and truest man in the colony. He was accused of making a plot to murder the council, of which he was supposed to be a member, and to make himself monarch of Virginia. An arrest followed, and confinement until the end of the voyage. When at last the colonists reached the site of their future settlement, the king's instructions were unsealed and the names of the seven members of the

Inferior Council made known. Then a meeting of that body was held and Edward Wingfield duly elected first governor of Virginia. Smith, who had been set at liberty, was now charged with sedition and excluded from his seat in the council. He demanded to be tried; and when it was found that his jealous enemies could bring nothing but their own suspicions against him, he was acquitted, and finally, through the good offices of Robert Hunt, restored to his place as a member of the corporation.

As soon as the settlement was well begun and the affairs of the colony



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

came into a better condition, the restless Smith, accompanied by Newport and twenty others, ascended and explored James River for forty-five miles. This was the first of those marvelous expeditions which were undertaken and carried out by Smith's enterprise and daring. Just below the falls of the river, at the present site of Richmond, the English explorers came upon the capital of Pow-

hatan, the Indian king. Smith was not greatly impressed with the magnificence of an empire whose chief city was a squalid village of twelve wigwams. The native monarch received the foreigners with formal courtesy and used his authority to moderate the dislike which his subjects manifested at the intrusion. About the last of May the company returned to Jamestown, and fifteen days later Newport embarked for England.

The colonists now for the first time began to realize their situation. They were alone amid the solitudes of the New World. The beauties of the Virginia wilderness were around them, but the terrors of the

approaching winter were already present to their imagination. In the latter part of August dreadful diseases broke out in the settlement, and the colony was brought to the verge of ruin. The fort which had been built for the defence of the plantation was filled with the sick and dying. At one time no more than five men were able to go on duty as sentinels. Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the colony and one of the best men in the council, died, and before the middle of September one-half of the whole number had been swept off by the terrible malady. If the frosts of autumn had not come to check the ravages of disease, no soul would have been left to tell the story.

Civil dissension was added to the other calamities of the settlement. President Wingfield, an unprincipled man, and his confederate, George Kendall, a member of the council, were detected in embezzling the stores of the colony. Attempting to escape in the company's vessel, they were arrested, impeached and removed from office. Only three councilmen now remained, Ratcliffe, Martin and Smith; the first was chosen president. He was a man who possessed neither ability nor courage, and the affairs of the settlers grew worse and worse. After a few weeks of vacillation and incompetency, he, like his predecessor, was caught in an attempt to abandon the colony, and willingly gave up an office which he could not fill. Only Martin and Smith now remained; the former elected the latter president of Virginia! It was a forlorn piece of business, but very necessary for the public good. In their distress and bitterness there had come to pass among the colonists a remarkable unanimity as to Smith's merits and abilities. The new administration entered upon the discharge of its duties without a particle of opposition.

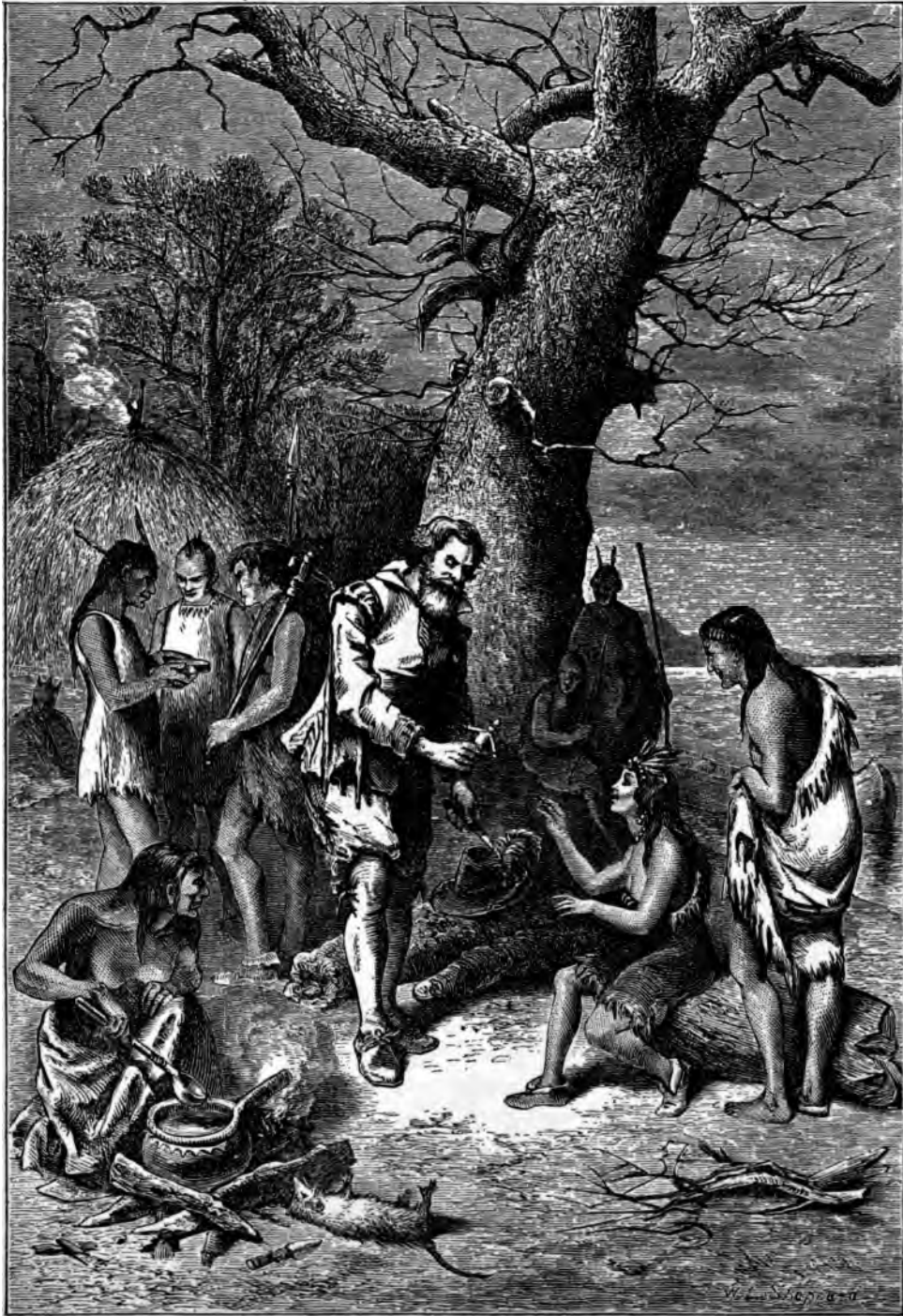
The new president, though not yet thirty years of age, was a veteran in every kind of valuable human experience. Born an Englishman; trained as a soldier in the wars of Holland; a traveler in France, Italy and Egypt; again a soldier in Hungary; captured by the Turks and sold as a slave; sent from Constantinople to a prison in the Crimea; killing a taskmaster who beat him, and then escaping through the woods of Russia to Western Europe; going with an army of adventurers against Morocco; finally returning to England and joining the London Company,—he was now called upon by the very enemies who had persecuted and ill-treated him to rescue them and their colony from destruction. A strange and wonderful career! John Smith was altogether the most noted man in the early history of America.

Under the new administration the Jamestown settlement soon began to show signs of vitality and progress. Smith's first care, after the settlers were in a measure restored to health, was to improve the buildings

of the plantation. The fortifications of the place were strengthened, dwellings were repaired, a storehouse erected, and everything made ready for the coming winter. The next measure was to secure a supply of provisions from the surrounding country. A plentiful harvest among the Indians had compensated in some degree for the mismanagement and rascality of the former officers of the colony, but to procure corn from the natives was not an easy task. Although ignorant of the Indian language, Smith undertook the hazardous enterprise. Descending James River as far as Hampton Roads, he landed with his five companions, went boldly among the natives, and began to offer them hatchets and copper coins in exchange for corn. The Indians only laughed at the proposal, and then mocked the half-starved foreigners by offering to barter a piece of bread for Smith's sword and musket. Finding that good treatment was only thrown away, the English captain formed the desperate resolution of fighting. He and his men fired a volley among the affrighted savages, who ran yelling into the woods. Going straight to their wigwams, he found an abundant store of corn, but forbade his men to take a grain until the Indians should return to attack them. Sixty or seventy painted warriors, headed by a priest who carried an idol in his arms, soon came out of the forest and made a violent onset. The English not only stood their ground, but made a rush, wounded several of the natives and captured their idol. A parley now ensued; the terrified priest came and humbly begged for his fallen deity, but Smith stood grimly with his musket across the prostrate idol, and would grant no terms until six unarmed Indians had loaded his boat with corn. Then the image was given up, beads and hatchets were liberally distributed among the warriors who ratified the peace by performing a dance of friendship, while Smith and his men rowed up the river with a boat-load of supplies.

There were other causes of rejoicing at Jamestown. The neighboring Indians, made liberal by their own abundance, began to come into the fort with voluntary contributions. The fear of famine passed away. The woods were full of wild turkeys and other game, inviting to the chase as many as delighted in such excitement. Good discipline was maintained in the settlement and friendly relations established with several of the native tribes. Seeing the end of their distresses, the colonists revived in spirit; cheerfulness and hope took the place of melancholy and despair.

As soon as the setting in of winter had made an abandonment of the colony impossible, the president, to whose ardor winter and summer were alike, gave himself freely to the work of exploring the country. With a company of six Englishmen and two Indian guides he began the ascent of the Chickahominy River. It was generally believed by the



JOHN SMITH AMONG THE INDIANS.

people of Jamestown that by going up this stream they could reach the Pacific Ocean. Smith knew well enough the absurdity of such an opinion, but humored it because of the opportunity which it gave him to explore new territory. The rest might dig imaginary gold-dust and hunt for the Pacific; he would see the country and map the course of the river.

The company proceeded up the Chickahominy until their barge ran aground in shallow water. Mooring the boat in a place of safety, Smith left four of the Englishmen to guard it, and with the other two and the Indian guides ascended the stream in a canoe. When this smaller craft could go no farther, it was put in charge of the white men, while the captain, with only the savages, proceeded on foot. For twenty miles he continued along the banks of the river, now dwindled to a mere creek winding about the woods and meadows. Meanwhile, the men who were left to protect the barge disobeyed their orders, and wandering into the forest, were attacked by three hundred Indians under the command of their king, Opechancanough, the brother of Powhatan. Three of the Englishmen escaped to the boat, but the fourth, George Cassen by name, was taken prisoner. Him the savages compelled by torture to reveal the whereabouts of Smith. The two men who guarded the canoe were next overtaken and killed. The captain himself was at last discovered, attacked, wounded with an arrow and chased through the woods. The missiles of the barbarians flew around him in a shower, but he compelled the Indian guides to stand between him and his enemies, and every discharge of his musket brought down a savage. He fought like a lion at bay, tied one of the guides to his left arm for a buckler, ran and fired by turns, stumbled into a morass, and was finally overtaken. The savages were still wary of their dangerous antagonist until he laid down his gun, made signs of surrender and was pulled out of the mire.

Without exhibiting the least signs of fear, Smith demanded to see the Indian chief, and on being taken into the presence of that dignitary began to excite his interest and curiosity by showing him a pocket compass and a watch. These mysterious instruments struck the Indians with awe; and profiting by his momentary advantage, the prisoner began to draw figures on the ground, and to give his captors some rude lessons in geography and astronomy. The savages were amazed and listened for an hour, but then grew tired, bound their captive to a tree and prepared to shoot him. At the critical moment he flourished his compass in the air as though performing a ceremony, and the Indians forbore to shoot. His sagacity and courage had gained the day, but the more appalling danger of torture was yet to be avoided. The savages, however, were

thoroughly superstitious, and became afraid to proceed against him except in the most formal manner. He was regarded by them as an inhabitant of another world whom it was dangerous to touch.

Smith was first taken to the town of Orapax, a few miles north-east of the site of Richmond. Here he found the Indians making great preparations to attack and destroy Jamestown. They invited him to join them and become their leader, but he refused, and then terrified them by describing the cannon and other destructive weapons of the English. He also managed to write a letter to his countrymen at the settlement, telling them of his captivity and their own peril, asking for certain articles, and requesting especially that those bearing the note should be thoroughly frightened before their return. This letter, which seemed to them to have such mysterious power of carrying intelligence to a distance, was not lost on the Indians, who dreaded the writer more than ever. When the warriors bearing the epistle arrived at Jamestown and found everything precisely as Smith had said, their terror and amazement knew no bounds, and as soon as they returned to Orapax all thought of attacking the settlement was at once given up.

The Indians now marched their captive about from village to village, the interest and excitement constantly increasing, until, near the fork of York River, they came to Pamunkey, the capital of Opechan-canough. Here Smith was turned over to the priests, who assembled in their Long House, or judgment-hall, and for three days together danced around him, sang and yelled after the manner of their superstition. The object was to determine by this wild ceremony what their prisoner's fate should be. The decision was against him, and he was condemned to death.

It was necessary that the sanction of the Indian emperor should be given to the sentence, and Smith was now taken twenty-five miles down the river to a town where Powhatan lived in winter. The savage monarch was now sixty years of age, and, to use Smith's own language, looked every inch a king. He received the prisoner with all the rude formalities peculiar to his race. Going to the Long House of the village, the emperor, clad in a robe of raccoon skins, took his seat on a kind of throne prepared for the occasion. His two daughters sat right and left, while files of warriors and women of rank were ranged around the hall. The king solemnly reviewed the cause and confirmed the sentence of death. Two large stones were brought into the hall, Smith was dragged forth bound, and his head put into position to be crushed with a war-club. A stalwart painted savage was ordered out of the rank and stood ready for the bloody tragedy. The signal was given, the grim executioner raised his bludgeon, and another moment had decided the fate of

both the illustrious captive and his colony. But the peril went by harmless. Matoaka,* the eldest daughter of Powhatan, sprang from her seat and rushed between the warrior's uplifted club and the prostrate prisoner. She clasped his head in her arms and held on with the resolution of despair until her father, yielding to her frantic appeals, ordered Smith to be unbound and lifted up. Again he was rescued from a terrible death. There is no reason in the world for doubting the truth of this affecting and romantic story, one of the most marvelous and touching in the history of any nation.

Powhatan, having determined to spare his captive's life, received him into favor. The prisoner should remain in the household of the monarch, making hatchets for the warriors and toys for the king's daughters. By degrees his liberties were enlarged, and it was even agreed soon afterward that he should return to his own people at Jamestown. The conditions of his liberation were that he should send back to Orapax two cannons and a grindstone. Certain warriors were to accompany Smith to the settlement and carry the articles to Powhatan. There should then be peace and friendship between the English and the Red men. The journey was accordingly begun, the company camping at night in the woods, and Smith being in constant peril of his life from the uncertain disposition of the savages. But the colony was reached in safety, the lost captain and his twelve Indian guides being received with great gladness.

Smith's first and chief care was to make a proper impression on the minds of the savages. He had improved the opportunities of his captivity by learning the language of Powhatan's people, and by making himself familiar with their peculiarities and weaknesses—an experience of vast importance to himself and the colony. He now ordered the two cannons which he had promised to give Powhatan to be brought out and loaded to the muzzle with stones. Then, under pretence of teaching the Indians gunnery, he had the pieces discharged among the tree-tops, which were bristling with icicles. There was a terrible crash, and the savages, cowering with fear and amazement, could not be induced to touch the dreadful engines. The barbarous delegation returned to their king with neither guns nor grindstones.

As a matter of fact, the settlers were very little to be dreaded by anybody. Only thirty-eight of them were left alive, and these were frost-bitten and half starved. Their only competent leader had been absent for seven weeks in the middle of one of the severest winters known in

* Powhatan's tribe had a superstition that no one *whose real name was unknown* could be injured. They therefore told the English falsely that Matoaka's name was Pocahontas.

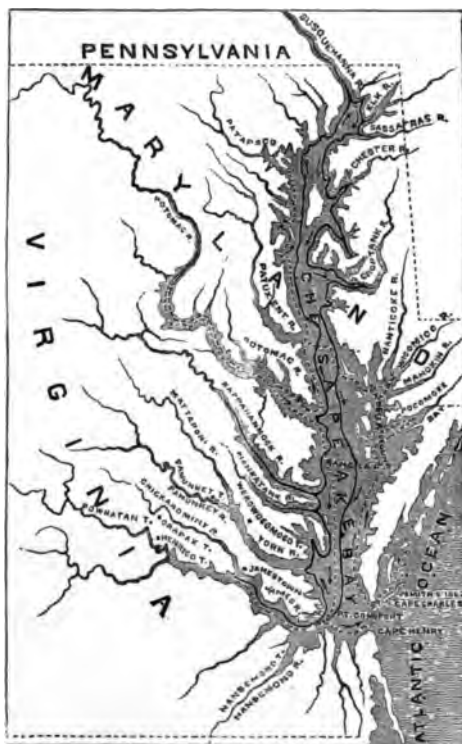
modern times. The old fears and discontents of the colonists had revived ; and when Smith returned to the settlement, he found all hands preparing to escape in the pinnace as soon as the ice should break in the river. With much persuasion and a few wholesome threats he induced the majority to abandon this project, but the factious spirits of the colony, burning with resentment against him and his influence, made a conspiracy to kill him, and he knew not what hour might be his last.

In the midst of these dark days Captain Newport arrived from England. He brought a full store of supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants. Great was the joy throughout the little plantation ; only the president was at heart as much grieved as gladdened, for he saw in the character of the new comers no promise of anything but vexation and disaster. Here were thirty-four gentlemen at the head of the list to begin with ; then came gold-hunters, jewelers, engravers, adventurers, strollers and vagabonds, many of whom had more business in jail than at Jamestown. To add to Smith's chagrin, this company of worthless creatures had been sent out contrary to his previous protest and injunction. He had urged Newport to bring over only a few industrious mechanics and laborers ; but the love of gold among the members of the London Company had prevailed over common sense to send to Virginia another crowd of profligates.

The kind of industry which Smith had encouraged in the colony was now laughed at. As soon as the weather would permit, the newcomers and as many of the old settlers as had learned nothing from the past year's experience began to stroll about the country digging for gold. In a bank of sand at the mouth of a small tributary of the James some glittering particles were found, and the whole settlement was ablaze with excitement. Martin and Newport, both members of the council, were carried away with the common fanaticism. The former already in imagination saw himself loaded with wealth and honored with a peerage. The latter, having filled one of his ships with the supposed gold-dust, sent it to England, and then sailed up James River to find the Pacific Ocean ! Fourteen weeks of the precious springtime, that ought to have been given to ploughing and planting, were consumed in this stupid nonsense. Even the Indians ridiculed the madness of men who for imaginary grains of gold were wasting their chances for a crop of corn.

In this general folly Smith was quite forgotten ; but foreseeing that the evil must soon work its own cure, he kept his patience, and in the mean time busied himself with one of his most brilliant and successful enterprises ; this was no less than the exploration of Chesapeake Bay and its tributaries. Accompanied by Dr. Russell and thirteen other comrades

who had remained faithful to him, he left Jamestown on the 2d day of June. He had nothing but an open barge of three tons' burden, but in this he steered boldly out by way of Hampton Roads and Cape Henry as far as Smith's Island. Returning thence around the peninsula which ends with Cape Charles, the survey of the eastern shore of the bay was begun, and continued northward as far as the river Wicomico, in Maryland. From this point the expedition crossed over to the mouth of the Patuxent, and thence coasted northward along the western side to the Patapsco. Here some members of the company became discontented, and insisted on returning to the colony. Smith gave a reluctant consent, but in steering southward had the good fortune to enter the mouth of the Potomac. The crew were so much pleased with the prospect that they agreed to explore the great river before returning homeward. Accordingly, the barge was steered up stream as far as the falls above Georgetown. The country was much admired; and when the explorers were tired of adventure, they dropped down the river to the bay, and turning southward, reached Jamestown on the 21st of July.



JAMESTOWN AND VICINITY.

Smith's First Voyage in the Chesapeake -----
 Smith's Second Voyage in the Chesapeake ————

After a rest of three days a second voyage was begun. This time the expedition reached the head of the bay, and sailed up the Susquehanna River until the volume of water would float the barge no farther. Here an acquaintance was made with a race of Indians of gigantic stature and fiercer disposition than was known among the natives of Virginia. On the return voyage Smith passed down the bay, exploring every sound and inlet of any note, as far as the mouth of the Rappahannoc; this stream he ascended to the head of navigation, and then, returning by way of the York and Chesapeake Rivers, reached Jamestown on the 7th of Septem-

ber. He had been absent a little more than three months, had explored the winding coast of the great bay for fully three thousand miles, had encountered hostile savages by hundreds and thousands, had been driven hither and thither by storms, once wrecked, once stung by a poisonous fish and brought so near to death that his comrades digged his grave; now he was come back to the colony with a *MAP OF THE CHESAPEAKE*, which he sent by Newport to England, and which is still preserved. Only one man had been lost on the expedition. Richard Fetherstone had died, and was buried on the Rappahannoc.

Within three days after Smith's return to Jamestown he was formally elected president. He entered at once upon the duties of his office, correcting abuses, enforcing the laws and restoring order to the distracted colony. There was a marked change for the better; gold-hunting became unpopular, and the rest of the year was noted as a season of great prosperity. Late in the autumn Newport arrived with seventy additional immigrants, increasing the number to more than two hundred. The health was so good that only seven deaths occurred between September and May of the following year. Excellent discipline was maintained. Every well man was obliged to work six hours a day. New houses were built, new fields fenced in; and all through the winter the sound of axe and saw and hammer gave token of a prosperous and growing village. Such was the condition of affairs in the spring of 1609.

CHAPTER X.

VIRGINIA.—THE SECOND CHARTER.

ON the 23d of May, 1609, King James, without consulting the wishes of his American colonists, revoked their constitution, and granted to the London Company a new charter, by the terms of which the government of Virginia was completely changed. The territory included under the new patent extended from Cape Fear to Sandy Hook, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. The members of the Superior Council were now to be chosen by the stockholders of the company, vacancies were to be filled by the councilors, who were also empowered to elect a governor from their own number.

The council was at once organized in accordance with this charter.



and the excellent Lord De La Ware chosen governor for life. With him were joined in authority Sir Thomas Gates, lieutenant-general ; Sir George Somers, admiral ; Christopher Newport, vice-admiral ; Sir Thomas Dale, high marshal ; Sir Ferdinand Wainman, master of horse ; and other dignitaries of similar sort. Attracted by the influence of these noblemen, a large company of more than five hundred emigrants was speedily collected, and early in June a fleet of nine vessels sailed for America. Lord Delaware did not himself accompany the expedition, but delegated his authority to three commissioners, Somers, Gates and Newport. About the middle of July the ships, then passing the West Indies, were overtaken and scattered by a storm. One small vessel was wrecked, and another, having on board the commissioners of Lord Delaware, was driven ashore on one of the Bermuda Islands, where the crew remained until April of the following year ; the other seven ships came safely to Jamestown.

But who should now be governor ? Captain Smith was at first disposed to give up his office, but in a few days the affairs of the colony were plainly going to ruin, and he was urged by the old settlers and the better class of new-comers to continue in authority. Accordingly, declaring that his powers as president under the old constitution did not cease until some one should arrive from England properly commissioned to supersede him, he kept resolutely to the discharge of his duties, although in daily peril of his life. He arrested Ratcliffe* and Archer, put some of the most rebellious brawlers in prison, and then, in order to distract the attention of the rest, planned two new settlements, one, of a hundred and twenty men, under the command of Martin, to be established at Nansemond ; the other, of the same number, under Captain West, to form a colony at the falls of the James. Both companies behaved badly. In a few days after their departure troubles arose between West's men and the Indians. The president was sent for in order to settle the difficulty ; but finding his efforts unavailing, he returned to Jamestown. On his way down the river, while asleep in the boat, a bag of gunpowder lying near by exploded, burning and tearing his flesh so terribly that in his agony he leaped overboard. Being rescued from the river, he was carried to the fort, where he lay for some time racked with fever and tortured with his wounds. Finally, despairing of relief under the imperfect medical treatment which the colony afforded, he decided to return to England. He accordingly delegated his authority to Sir George Percy, a brother of the earl of Northumberland, and about the middle of Sep-

* This man's real name was not Ratcliffe, but *Sicklemore*. He had been president of the colony in 1607, and was an accomplished thief as well as an impostor.

tember, 1609, left the scene of his heroic toils and sufferings, never to return.

There remained at Jamestown a colony of four hundred and ninety persons, well armed, well sheltered and well supplied. But such was the viciousness and profligacy of the greater number, and such the insubordination and want of proper leadership, after Smith's departure, that by the beginning of winter the settlement was face to face with starvation. The Indians became hostile and hovered around the plantations, stragglers were intercepted and murdered, houses were fired at every opportunity, disease returned to add to the desolation, and cold and hunger completed the terrors of a winter which was long remembered with a shudder and called *THE STARVING TIME*. By the last of March there were only sixty persons alive, and these, if help had not come speedily, could hardly have lived a fortnight.

Meanwhile, Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been shipwrecked in the Bermudas, had constructed out of the materials of their old ship, with such additional timber as they could cut from the forest, two small vessels, and set sail for Virginia. They came in full expectation of a joyful greeting from a happy colony. What, therefore, was their disappointment and grief when a few wan, half-starved wretches crawled out of their cabins to beg for bread! Whatever stores the commissioners had brought with them were distributed to the famishing settlers, and Gates assumed control of the government.

But the colonists had now fully determined to abandon for ever a place which promised them nothing but disaster and death. In vain did the commissioners remonstrate; they were almost driven by the clamors around them to yield to the common will. An agreement was made to sail for Newfoundland; there the remnant of the Virginia colony should be distributed among the fishermen until such time as some friendly ship might carry them back to England.

On the 8th of June Jamestown was abandoned. The disheartened settlers, now grown resentful, were anxious before leaving to burn the town, but Gates defeated this design, and was himself the last man to go on board. Four pinnaces lay at their moorings in the river; embarking in these, the colonists dropped down with the tide, and it seemed as though the enterprise of Raleigh and Gosnold had ended in failure and humiliation.

But Lord Delaware was already on his way to America. Before the escaping settlers had passed out of the mouth of the river, the ships of the noble governor came in sight. Here were additional immigrants, plentiful supplies and promise of better things to come. Would the

colonists return? The majority gave a reluctant consent, and before night-fall the fires were again kindled on the hearthstones of the deserted village. The next day was given to religious services; the governor caused his commission to be read, and entered upon the discharge of his duties. The amiability and virtue of his life, no less than the mildness and decision of his administration, endeared him to all and inspired the colony with hope.

Autumn came, and Lord Delaware fell sick. Against his own will, and to the great regret of the colony, he was compelled to return to England. Having reluctantly delegated his authority to Percy—the same who had been the deputy of Captain Smith—the good Delaware set sail for his own country. It was an event of great discouragement; but fortunately, before a knowledge of the governor's departure reached England, the Superior Council had despatched a new shipload of stores and another company of emigrants, under command of Sir Thomas Dale. The vessel arrived at Jamestown on the 10th of May, and Percy was superseded by the captain, who bore a commission from the council. Dale had been a military officer in the wars of the Netherlands, and he now adopted a system of martial law as the basis of his administration. He was, however, a man so tolerant and just that very little complaint was made on account of his arbitrary method of governing.

One of Dale's first acts was to write to the council in England, requesting that body to send out immediately as large a number of colonists as possible, with an abundance of supplies. For once the council acted promptly; and in the latter part of August, Sir Thomas Gates arrived with a fleet of six ships, having on board three hundred immigrants and a large quantity of stores. There was great thanksgiving in the colony, a fresh enthusiasm was enkindled, and contentment came with a sense of security.

Thus far the property of the settlers at Jamestown had been held in common. The colonists had worked together, and in time of harvest deposited their products in storehouses which were under the control of the governor and council. Now the right of holding private property was recognized. Governor Gates had the lands divided so that each settler should have three acres of his own; every family might cultivate a garden and plant an orchard, the fruits of which no one but the owner was allowed to gather. The benefits of this system of labor were at once apparent. The laborers, as soon as each was permitted to claim the rewards of his own toil, became cheerful and industrious. There were now seven hundred persons in the colony; new plantations were laid out on every side, and new settlements were formed on both banks of the river and at considerable distances from Jamestown. The promise of an American State, so long deferred, seemed at last to be realized.

CHAPTER XI.

VIRGINIA.—THE THIRD CHARTER.

EARLY in the year 1612 the London Company obtained from the king a third patent, by the terms of which the character of the government was entirely changed. The Superior Council was abolished and the powers of that body transferred to the stockholders, who were authorized to hold public meetings, to elect their own officers, to discuss and decide all questions of law and right, and to govern the colony on their own responsibility. The cause of this change was the unprofitableness of the colony as a financial enterprise, and the consequent dissatisfaction of the company with the management of the council. The new patent, although not so intended by the king, was a great step toward a democratic form of government in Virginia.

2. The year 1613 was marked by two important events, both of them resulting from the lawless behavior of Captain Samuel Argall. While absent on an expedition up the Potomac River he learned that Pocahontas, who had had some difficulty with her father's tribe, was residing in that neighborhood. Procuring the help of a treacherous Indian family, the English captain enticed the unsuspecting girl on board his vessel and carried her captive to Jamestown. The authorities of the colony, instead of punishing Argall for this atrocity, aggravated the outrage by demanding that Powhatan should pay a heavy ransom for his daughter's liberation. The old king indignantly refused, and ordered his tribes to prepare for war. Meanwhile, Pocahontas, who seems not to have been greatly grieved on account of her captivity, was converted to the Christian faith and became by baptism a member of the Episcopal Church. She was led to this course of action chiefly by the instruction and persuasion of John Rolfe, a worthy young man of the colony, who after the baptism of the princess sought her in marriage. Powhatan and his chief men gave their consent, and the nuptials were duly celebrated in the spring of the following year. By this means war was averted, and a bond of union established between the Indians and the whites.

3. Two years later Rolfe and his wife went to England, where they were received in the highest circles of society. Captain Smith gave them a letter of introduction to Queen Anne, and many other
gave them
ing atten-

tions were bestowed on the modest daughter of the Western wilderness. In the following year, Rolfe made preparations to return to America; but before embarking, Pocahontas fell sick and died. There was left of this marriage a son, who afterward came to Jamestown and was a man of some importance in the affairs of the colony. To him several influential families of Virginians still trace their origin. John Randolph of Roanoke was a grandson of the sixth generation from Pocahontas.

When Captain Argall returned from his expedition up the Potomac, he was sent with an armed vessel to the coast of Maine. The avowed object of the voyage was to protect the English fishermen who frequented the waters between the Bay of Fundy and Cape Cod, but the real purpose was to destroy the colonies of France, if any should be found within the limits of the territory claimed by England. Arriving at his destination, Argall soon found opportunity for the display of his violence and rapacity. The French authorities of Acadia were at this time building a village on Mount Desert Island, near the mouth of the Penobscot. This settlement was the first object of Argall's vengeance. The place was captured, pillaged and burned; part of the inhabitants were put on board a vessel bound for France, and the rest were carried to the Chesapeake. The French colony at the mouth of the St. Croix River next attracted the attention of the English captain, who cannonaded the fort and destroyed every building in the settlement. Passing thence across the bay to Port Royal, Argall burned the deserted hamlet which Poutrincourt and his companions had built there eight years before. On his way back to Virginia he made a descent on the Dutch traders of Manhattan Island, destroyed many of their huts, and compelled the settlers to acknowledge the sovereignty of England. The result of these outrageous proceedings was to confine the French settlements in America to the banks of the St. Lawrence, and to leave a clear coast for the English flag from Nova Scotia to Florida.

In the month of March, 1614, Sir Thomas Gates returned to England, leaving the government in the hands of Dale, whose administration lasted for two years. During this time the laws of the colony were much improved, and, more important still, the colonial industry took an entirely different form. Hitherto the labor of the settlers had been directed to the planting of vineyards and to the manufacture of potash, soap, glass and tar. The managers of the London Company had at last learned that these articles could be produced more cheaply in Europe than in America. They had also discovered that there were certain products peculiar to the New World which might be raised and exported with great profit. Chief among such native products was the plant called

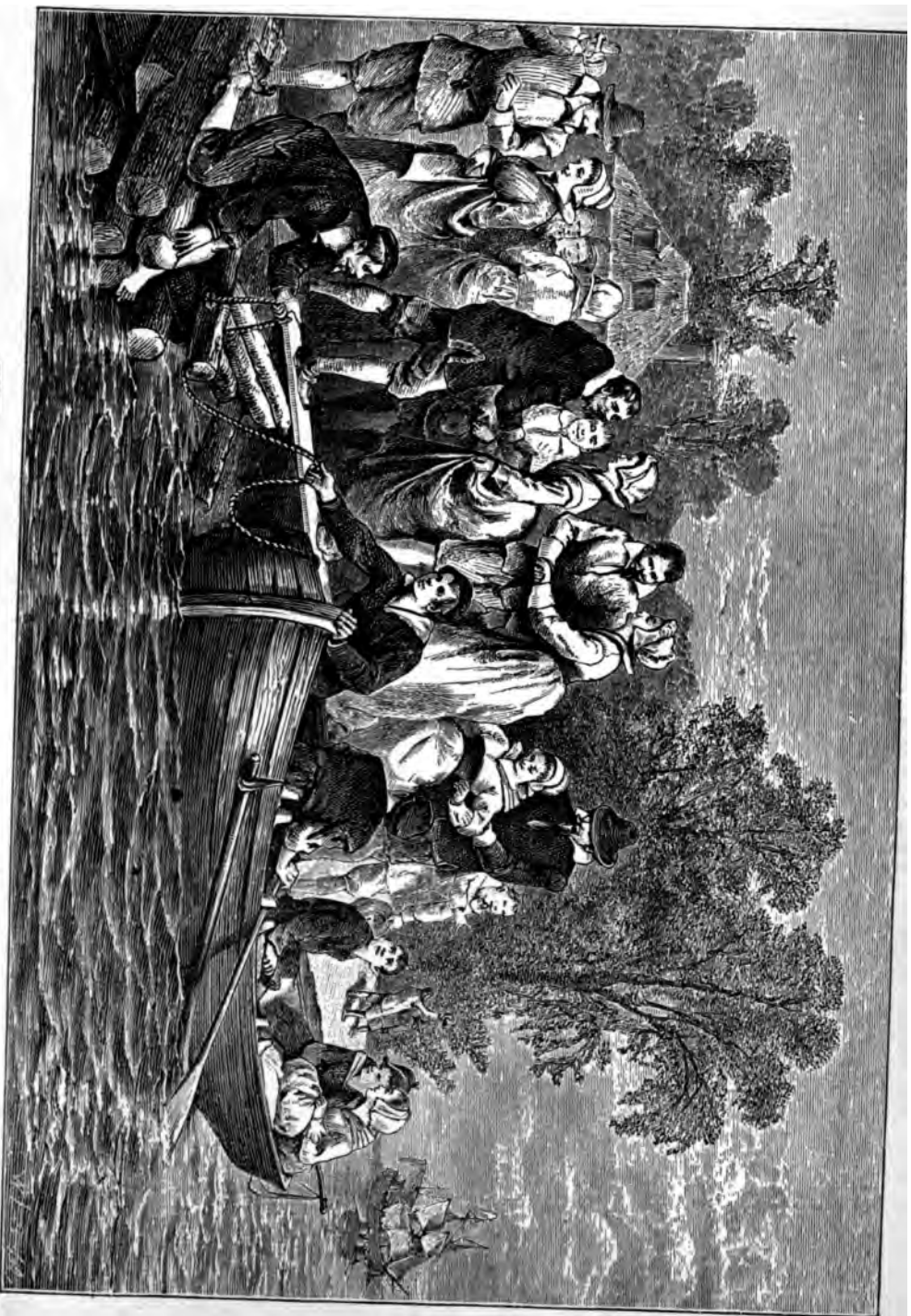
tobacco, the use of which had already become fashionable in Spain, England and France. This, then, became the leading staple of the colony, and was even used for money. So entirely did the settlers give themselves to the cultivation of the famous weed that the very streets of Jamestown were ploughed up and planted with it.

It was a great disaster to the people of the colony when Argall was chosen deputy-governor. He was a man who had one virtue, courage; and in all other respects was thoroughly bad. The election occurred in 1617, and through the influence of an unscrupulous faction composed of Argall's friends he was not only selected as Lord Delaware's deputy in America, but was also made an admiral of the English navy. His administration was characterized by fraud, oppression and violence. Neither property nor life was secure against his tyranny and greed. By and by, the news of his proceedings reached England; emigration ceased at once, and the colony became a reproach, until Lord Delaware restored confidence by embarking in person for Virginia. But the worthy nobleman died on the voyage, and Argall continued his exactions and cruelty. In the spring of 1619, he was at last displaced through the influence of Sir Edwyn Sandys, and the excellent Sir George Yeardley appointed to succeed him.

Martial law was now abolished. The act which required each settler to give a part of his labor for the common benefit was also repealed, and thus the people were freed from a kind of colonial servitude. Another action was taken of still greater importance. Governor Yeardley, in accordance with instructions received from the company, divided the plantations along James River into eleven districts, called boroughs, and issued a proclamation to the citizens of each borough to elect two of their own number to take part in the government of the colony. The elections were duly held, and on the 30th of July, 1619, the delegates came together at Jamestown. Here was organized the Virginia HOUSE OF BURGESSES, a colonial legislature, the first popular assembly held in the New World.

The Burgesses had many privileges, but very little power. They might discuss the affairs of the colony, but could not control them; pass laws, but could not enforce them; declare their rights, but could not secure them. Though the governor and council should both concur in the resolutions of the assembly, no law was binding until ratified by the company in England. Only one great benefit was gained—the freedom of debate. Wherever that is recognized, liberty must soon follow.

The year 1619 was also marked by the introduction of negro slavery into Virginia. The servants of the people of Jamestown had hitherto



WIVES FOR THE SETTLERS AT JAMESTOWN.

been persons of English or German descent, and their term of service had varied from a few months to many years. No perpetual servitude had thus far been recognized, nor is it likely that the English colonists would of themselves have instituted the system of slave labor. In the month of August a Dutch man-of-war sailed up the river to the plantations, and offered by auction twenty Africans. They were purchased by the wealthier class of planters, and made slaves for life. It was, however, nearly a half century from this time before the system of negro slavery became well established in the English colonies.

Twelve years had now passed since the founding of Jamestown. Eighty thousand pounds sterling had been spent by the company in the attempted development of the new State. As a result there were only six hundred men in the colony, and these for the most part were rovers who intended to return to England. Sir Thomas Smith, the treasurer, had managed matters badly. Very few families had emigrated, and society in Virginia was coarse and vicious. In this condition of affairs Smith was superseded by Sir Edwyn Sandys, a man of great prudence and integrity. A reformation of abuses was at once begun and carried out. By his wisdom and liberality the new treasurer succeeded before the end of the summer of 1620 in collecting and sending to America a company of twelve hundred and sixty-one persons. Another measure of still greater importance was equally successful. By the influence of Sandys and his friends, ninety young women of good breeding and modest manners were induced to emigrate to Jamestown. In the following spring sixty others of similar good character came over, and received a hearty welcome.

The statement that the early Virginians bought their wives is absurd. All that was done was this: when Sandys sent the first company of women to America, he charged the colonists with the expense of the voyage—a measure made necessary by the fact that the company was almost bankrupt. An assessment was made according to the number who were brought over, and the rate fixed at a hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco for each passenger—a sum which the settlers cheerfully paid. The many marriages that followed were celebrated in the usual way, and nothing further was thought of the transaction. When the second shipload came, the cost of transportation was reported at a hundred and fifty pounds for each passenger, which was also paid without complaint.

In July of 1621 the London Company, which had now almost run its course, gave to Virginia a code of written laws and frame of government modeled after the English constitution. The terms of the instrument were few and easily understood. The governor of the colony was as hitherto to be appointed by the company, a council to be chosen

by the same body, and a house of burgesses, two members from each district, to be elected by the people. In making laws the councilors and burgesses sat together. When a new law was proposed, it was debated, and if passed received the governor's signature, then was transmitted to England and ratified or rejected by the company. The constitution also acknowledged the right of petition and of trial by jury, but the most remarkable and liberal concession was that which gave the burgesses the power of vetoing any objectionable acts of the company.

Governor Yeardley's administration ended in October of 1621. At that time Sir Francis Wyatt arrived, commissioned as governor and bearing the new constitution of Virginia. The colony was found in a very flourishing condition. The settlements extended for a hundred and forty miles along both banks of James River and far into the interior, especially northward toward the Potomac. There remained but one cause of foreboding and alarm. The Indians had seen in all this growth and prosperity the doom of their own race, and had determined to make one desperate effort to destroy their foes before it should be too late. To do this in open war was impossible; necessity and the savage impulse working together suggested treachery as the only means likely to accomplish the result. Circumstances favored the villainous undertaking. Pocahontas was dead. The peaceable and faith-keeping Powhatan had likewise passed away. The ambitious and crafty Opechancanough, who succeeded to his brother's authority in 1618, had ever since been plotting the destruction of the English colony, and the time had come for the bloody tragedy.

The savages carefully concealed their murderous purpose. Until the very day of the massacre they continued on terms of friendship with the English. They came unmolested into the settlements, ate with their victims, borrowed boats and guns, made purchases, and gave not the slightest token of hostility. The attack was planned for the 22d of March, at mid-day. At the fatal hour the work of butchery began. Every hamlet in Virginia was attacked by a band of yelling barbarians. No age, sex or condition awakened an emotion of pity. Men, women and children were indiscriminately slaughtered, until three hundred and forty-seven had perished under the knives and hatchets of the savages.

But Indian treachery was thwarted by Indian faithfulness. What was the chagrin and rage of the warriors to find that Jamestown and the other leading settlements had been warned at the last moment, and were prepared for the onset? A converted Red man, wishing to save an Englishman who had been his friend, went to him on the night before the massacre and revealed the plot. The alarm was spread among the settlements, and thus the greater part of the colony escaped destruction. But

the outer plantations were entirely destroyed. The people crowded together on the larger farms about Jamestown, until of the eighty settlements there were only eight remaining. Still, there were sixteen hundred resolute men in the colony; and although gloom and despondency prevailed for a while, the courage of the settlers soon revived, and sorrow gave place to a desire for vengeance.

It was now the turn of the Indians to suffer. Parties of English soldiers scoured the country in every direction, destroying wigwams, burning villages and killing every savage that fell in their way, until the tribes of Opechancanough were driven into the wilderness. The colonists, regaining their confidence and zeal, returned to their deserted farms, and the next year brought such additions that the census showed a population of two thousand five hundred.

Meanwhile, difficulties arose between the corporation and the king. Most of the members of the London Company belonged to the patriot party in England, and the freedom with which they were in the habit of discussing political and governmental matters was very distasteful to the monarch. A meeting of the stockholders, now a numerous body, was held once every three months, and the debates took a wider and still wider range. The liberal character of the Virginia constitution was offensive to King James, who determined by some means to obtain control of the London Company, or else to suppress it altogether. A committee was accordingly appointed to look into the affairs of the corporation and to make a report on its management. The commissioners performed their duty, and reported that the company, in addition to being a hot-bed of political agitation, was unsound in every part, that the treasury was bankrupt, and especially that the government of Virginia was bad and would continue so until a radical change should be made in the constitution of the new State.

Legal proceedings were now instituted by the ministers to ascertain whether the company's charter had not been forfeited. The question came before the judges, who had no difficulty in deciding that the violated patent was null and void. In accordance with this decision, the charter of the corporation was canceled by the king, and in June of 1624 the London Company ceased to exist. But its work had been well done; a torch of liberty had been lighted on the banks of the James which all the gloomy tyranny of after times could not extinguish. The Virginians were not slow to remember and to claim ever afterward the precious rights which were guaranteed in the constitution of 1621. And the other colonies would be satisfied with nothing less than the chartered privileges which were recognized in the laws of the Old Dominion.

CHAPTER XII.

VIRGINIA.—THE ROYAL GOVERNMENT.

A ROYAL government was now established in Virginia. To the colonists themselves the change of authorities was scarcely perceptible. The new administration consisted of a governor and twelve councilors appointed by the crown. The General Assembly of the colony was left undisturbed, and all the rights and privileges of the colonists remained as before. The king's hostility had been directed against the London Company, and not against the State of Virginia; now that the former was destroyed the latter was left unmolested. Governor Wyatt was continued in office; and in making up the new council the king wisely took pains to select the known friends of the colony rather than certain untried partisans of his own court. The Virginians found in the change of government as much cause of gratitude as of grief.

King James of England died in 1625. His son, Charles I., a young, inexperienced and stubborn prince, succeeded to the throne. The new king paid but little attention to the affairs of his American colony, until the commerce in tobacco attracted his notice. Seeing in this product a source of revenue for the crown, he attempted to gain a monopoly of the trade, but the colonial authorities outwitted him and defeated the project. It is worthy of special note that while conferring with the colony on this subject the king recognized the Virginia assembly as a rightfully constituted power. The reply which was finally returned to the king's proposal was signed not only by the governor and council, but by thirty-one of the burgesses.

In 1626 Governor Wyatt retired from office, and Yeardley, the old friend and benefactor of the colonists, was reappointed. The young State was never more prosperous than under this administration, which was terminated by the governor's death, in November of 1627. During the preceding summer a thousand new immigrants had come to swell the population of the growing province.

The council of Virginia had a right, in case of an emergency, to elect a governor. Such an emergency was now present, and Francis West was chosen by the councilors; but as soon as the death of Yeardley

was known in England, King Charles commissioned John Harvey to assume the government. He arrived in the autumn of 1629, and from this time until 1635, the colony was distracted with the presence of a most unpopular chief magistrate. He seems to have been disliked on general principles, but the greatest source of dissatisfaction was his partiality to certain speculators and land monopolists who at this time infested Virginia, to the annoyance and injury of the poorer people. There were many old land grants covering districts of territory which were now occupied by actual settlers, and between the holders of the lands and the holders of the titles violent altercations arose. In these disputes the governor became a partisan of the speculators against the people, until the outraged assembly of 1635 passed a resolution that Sir John Harvey be thrust out of office, and Captain West be appointed in his place "until the king's pleasure may be known in this matter." A majority of the councilors sided with the burgesses, and Harvey was obliged to go to England to stand his trial.

King Charles treated the whole affair with contempt. The commissioners appointed by the council of Virginia to conduct Harvey's impeachment were refused a hearing, and he was restored to the governorship of the unwilling colony. He continued in power until the year 1639, when he was superseded by Wyatt, who ruled until the spring of 1642.

And now came the English Revolution. The exactions and tyranny of Charles at last drove his subjects into open rebellion. In January of 1642, the king and his friends left London, and repairing to Nottingham, collected an army of royalists. The capital and southern part of the country remained in the power of Parliament. The High Church party and the adherents of monarchy took sides with the king, while the republicans and dissenters made up the opposing forces. The country was plunged into the horrors of civil war. After a few years of conflict the royal army was routed and dispersed; the king escaped to Scotland, and the leading royalists fled to foreign lands. On the demand of Parliament Charles was given up and brought to trial. The cause was heard, a sentence of death was passed, and on the 30th of January, 1649, the unhappy monarch was beheaded.

Monarchy was now abolished. Oliver Cromwell, the general of the Parliamentary army, was made Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England. By him the destinies of the nation were controlled until his death, in 1658, when he was succeeded by his son Richard. But the latter, lacking his father's abilities and courage, became alarmed at the dangers that gathered around him, and resigned. For a few months the

country was in anarchy, until General Monk, who commanded the English army of the North, came down from Scotland and declared a restoration of the monarchy. The exiled son of Charles I. was called home and proclaimed king, the people acquiesced, Parliament sanctioned the measure, and on the 18th of May, 1660, Charles II. was placed on the throne of England.

These were times full of trouble. Virginia shared in some degree the distractions of the mother-country, yet the evil done to the new State by the conflict in England was less than might have been expected. In the first year of the civil war Sir William Berkeley became governor of the colony, and, with the exception of a brief visit to England in 1645, remained in office for ten years. His administration, notwithstanding the commotions abroad, was noted as a time of rapid growth and development. The laws were greatly improved and made conformable to the English statutes. The old controversies about the lands were satisfactorily settled. Cruel punishments were abolished and the taxes equalized. The general assembly was regularly convened to bear its part in the government, and Virginia was in all essential particulars a free as well as a prosperous State. So rapid was the progress that in 1646 there were twenty thousand people in the colony.

But there were also drawbacks to the prosperity of Virginia. Religious intolerance came with its baleful shadow to disturb the State. The faith of the Episcopal Church was established by law, and dissenting was declared a crime. The Puritans were held in contempt by the people, who charged them with being the destroyers of the peace of England. In March of 1643 a statute was enacted by the assembly declaring that no person who disbelieved the doctrines of the English Church should be allowed to teach publicly or privately, or to preach the gospel, within the limits of Virginia. The few Puritans in the colony were excluded from their places of trust, and some were even driven from their homes. Governor Berkeley, himself a zealous churchman, was a leader in these persecutions, by which all friendly relations with New England were broken off for many years.

A worse calamity befell in a second war with the Indians. Early in 1644, the natives, having forgotten their former punishment, and believing that in the confusion of the civil war there still remained a hope of destroying the English, planned a general massacre. On the 18th of April, at a time when the authorities were somewhat off their guard, the savages fell upon the frontier settlements, and before assistance could be brought murdered three hundred people. Alarmed at their own atrocity, the warriors then fled, but were followed by the English forces and

driven into the woods and swamps. The aged Opechancanough was captured, and died a prisoner. The tribes were chastised without mercy, and were soon glad to purchase peace by the cession of large tracts of land.

The Virginians adhered with great firmness to the cause of Charles I. in his war with Parliament, and after his death proclaimed the exiled Charles II. as rightful sovereign of the country. Cromwell and the Parliament were much exasperated at this course of conduct, and measures were at once devised to bring the colony to submission. An ordinance was passed laying heavy restrictions on the commerce of such English colonies as refused to acknowledge the supremacy of Parliament. All foreign ships, especially those of Holland, were forbidden to enter the colonial harbors. In 1651 the noted statute called the Navigation Act was passed, and the trade of the colonies was still more seriously distressed. In this new law it was enacted that the foreign commerce of Virginia, now grown into importance, should be carried on wholly in English vessels, and directed exclusively to English ports.

The Virginians held out, and Cromwell determined to employ force. A war-vessel called the *Guinea* was sent into the Chesapeake to compel submission, but in the last extreme the Protector showed himself to be just as well as wrathful. There were commissioners on board the frigate authorized to make an offer of peace, and this was gladly accepted. It was seen that the cause of the Stuarts was hopeless. The people of Virginia, although refusing to yield to threats and violence, cheerfully entered into negotiations with Cromwell's delegates, and ended by acknowledging the supreme authority of Parliament. The terms of the settlement were very favorable to popular liberty; the commercial restrictions of the two previous years were removed, and the trade of the colony was made as free as that of England. No taxes might be levied or duties collected except such as were imposed by the general assembly of the State. The freedom of an Englishman was guaranteed to every citizen, and under the control of her own laws Virginia again grew prosperous.

No further difficulty arose during the continuance of the Commonwealth. The Protector was busied with the affairs of Europe, and had neither time nor disposition to interfere in the affairs of a remote colony. The Virginians were thus left free to conduct their government as they would. Even the important matter of choosing a governor was submitted to an election in the House of Burgesses; when so great a power had been once exercised, it was not likely to be relinquished without a struggle. Three governors were chosen in this way, and what was at first only a privilege soon became a right. Special acts of the assembly

declared that such a right existed, and that it should be transmitted to posterity.

In 1660, just at the time of the resignation of Richard Cromwell, Samuel Matthews, the last of the three elected governors, died. The burgesses were immediately convened, and an ordinance was passed declaring that the supreme authority of Virginia was resident in the colony, and would continue there until a delegate with proper credentials should arrive from the British government. Having made this declaration, the house elected as governor Sir William Berkeley, who by accepting the office acknowledged the right of the burgesses to choose. The question of recognizing Charles II. as king was debated at the same session, but prudence suggested that the colonial authorities would better await the natural course of events. For the present it was decided to remain faithful to Parliament. Most of the people, no doubt, desired the restoration, but policy forbade any open expressions of such a preference. It would be time enough when monarchy was actually restored.

In May of 1660 Charles II. became king of England. As soon as this event was known in Virginia, Governor Berkeley, forgetting the source of his own authority, and in defiance of all consistency, issued writs in the name of the king for the election of a new assembly. The friends of royalty were delighted with the prospect. The adherents of the Commonwealth were thrust out of office, and the favorites of the king established in their places. Great benefits were expected from the change, and the whole colony was alive with excitement and zeal. But the disappointment of the people was more bitter than their hopes had been extravagant. The Virginians soon found that they had exchanged a republican tyrant with good principles for a monarchical tyrant with bad ones. King Charles II. was the worst monarch of modern times, and the people of Virginia had in him and his government a special cause of grief. The commercial system of the Commonwealth, so far from being abolished, was re-enacted in a more hateful form than ever. The new statute provided that all the colonial commerce, whether exports or imports, should be carried on in English ships, the trade between the colonies was burdened with a heavy tax for the benefit of the government, and tobacco, the staple of Virginia, could be sold nowhere but in England. This odious measure gave to English merchantmen a monopoly of the carrying trade of the colonies, and by destroying competition among the buyers of tobacco robbed the Virginians to that extent of their leading product. Remonstrance was tried in vain. The cold and selfish monarch only sneered at the complaints of his American subjects, and the commercial ordinances were rigorously enforced.

Charles II. seemed to regard the British empire as personal property to be used for the benefit of himself and his courtiers. In order to reward the worthless profligates who thronged his court, he began to grant to them large tracts of land in Virginia. What did it matter that these lands had been redeemed from the wilderness and were covered with orchards and gardens? It was no uncommon thing for an American planter to find that his farm, which had been cultivated for a quarter of a century, was given away to some dissolute flatterer of the royal household. Great distress was occasioned by these iniquitous grants, until finally, in 1673, the king set a limit to his own recklessness by giving away the whole State. Lord Culpepper and the earl of Arlington, two ignoble noblemen, received under the great seal a deed by which was granted to them for thirty-one years all the dominion of land and water called Virginia.

Unfortunately, the colonial legislation of these times became as selfish and narrow-minded as the policy of the king was mean. An aristocratic party which had arisen in the colony obtained control of the House of Burgesses, and the new laws rivaled those of England in illiberality. Episcopalianism was again established as the State religion. A proscriptive ordinance was passed against the Baptists, and the peace-loving Quakers were fined, persecuted and imprisoned. Burdensome taxes were laid on personal property and polls; the holders of large estates were exempt and the poorer people afflicted. The salaries of the officers were secured by a permanent duty on tobacco, and, worst of all, the biennial election of burgesses was abolished, so that the members of the existing assembly continued indefinitely in power. For a while Berkeley and his council outdid the tyranny of England.

And then came open resistance. The people were worn out with the governor's exactions, and availed themselves of the first pretext to assert their rights by force of arms. A war with the Susquehanna Indians furnished the occasion for an insurrection. The tribes about the head of Chesapeake Bay and along the Susquehanna had been attacked by the Senecas and driven from their homes. They, in turn, fell upon the English settlers of Maryland, and the banks of the Potomac became the scene of a border war. Virginia and Maryland made common cause against the savages. John Washington, great-grandfather of the first president of the United States, led a company of militia into the enemy's country, and compelled the Susquehannas to sue for peace. Six of their chieftains went into Virginia as ambassadors, and, to the lasting dishonor of the colony, were foully murdered. This atrocity maddened the savages, and a devastating warfare raged along the whole frontier.

Governor Berkeley, not without some show of justice, sided with

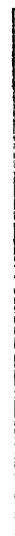
the Indians. But the colonists remembered only the many acts of treachery and bloodshed of which the red men had before been guilty, and were determined to have revenge. In this division of sentiment among the people, the assembly and the aristocratic party took sides with the governor and favored a peace; while the popular party, disliking Berkeley and hating the Indians, resolved to overthrow him and destroy them at one blow. A leader was found in that remarkable man, Nathaniel Bacon. Young, brave, eloquent, patriotic, full of enthusiasm and energy, he became the soul and life of the popular party. His own farm in the county of Henrico had been pillaged and his tenants murdered by the savages. Exasperated by these injuries, he was the more easily urged by the public voice to accept the dangerous office of leading an insurrection.

Five hundred men rushed to arms and demanded to be led against the Indians. Alarm, excitement and passion prevailed throughout the colony. The patriot forces were organized; and without permission of a government which they had ceased to regard, the march was begun into the enemy's country. Berkeley and the aristocratic faction were enraged at this proceeding, and proclaimed Bacon a traitor. A levy of troops was made for the purpose of dispersing the rebellious militia; but scarcely had Berkeley and his forces left Jamestown when another popular uprising in the lower counties compelled him to return. Affairs were in an uproar. Bacon came home victorious. The old assembly was unceremoniously broken up, and a new one elected on the basis of universal suffrage. Bacon was chosen a member for Henrico, and soon after elected commander-in-chief of the Virginia army. The governor refused to sign his commission, and Bacon appealed to the people; the militia again flew to arms, and Berkeley was compelled to yield. Not only was the commission signed, but a paper drawn up by the burgesses in commendation of Bacon's loyalty, zeal and patriotism received the executive signature and was transmitted to Parliament.

Peace returned to the colony. The power of the savages was completely broken. A military force was stationed on the frontier, and a sense of security returned to all the settlements. But Berkeley was petulant, proud and vengeful; and it was only a question of time when the struggle would be renewed. Seizing the first opportunity, the governor left Jamestown and repaired to the county of Gloucester, on the north side of York River. Here he summoned a convention of loyalists, who, contrary to his expectations and wishes, advised moderation and compromise; but the hot-headed old cavalier would yield no jot of his prerogative to what he was pleased to call a rabble, and Bacon was again proclaimed a traitor.



GOVERNOR BERKELEY AND THE INSURGENTS.



It was evident that there must be fighting. Berkeley and his forces left Gloucester, crossed the Chesapeake Bay, and took station on the eastern shore, in the county of Accomac. Here his troops were organized; the crews of some English ships were joined to his command, and the fleet set sail for Jamestown. The place was taken without much resistance; but when Bacon with a few companies of patriots drew near, the loyal forces deserted and went over to his standard. The governor with his adherents was again obliged to fly, and the capital remained in possession of the people's party. The assembly was about to assume control of the government without the governor, whose flight to Accomac had been declared an abdication, when a rumor arose that an English fleet was approaching for the subjugation of the colonies. The patriot leaders held a council, and it was determined that Jamestown should be burned. Accordingly, in the dusk of the evening the torch was applied, and the only town in Virginia laid in ashes. The leading men set the example by throwing firebrands into their own houses; others caught the spirit of sacrifice; the flames shot up through the shadows of night; and Governor Berkeley and his followers, on board a fleet twenty miles down the river, had tolerably fair warning that the capital of Virginia could not be used for the purposes of despotism.

In this juncture of affairs Bacon fell sick and died. It was an event full of grief and disaster. The patriot party, discouraged by the loss of the heroic chieftain, was easily dispersed. A few feeble efforts were made to revive the cause of the people, but the animating spirit which had controlled and directed until now was gone. The royalists found an able leader in Robert Beverly, and the authority of the governor was rapidly restored throughout the province. The cause of the people and the leader of the people had died together.

Berkeley's vindictive passions were now let loose upon the defeated insurgents. Fines and confiscations became the order of the day. The governor seemed determined to drown the memory of his own wrongs in the woes of his subjects. Twenty-two of the leading patriots were seized and hanged with scarcely time to bid their friends farewell. Thus died Thomas Hansford, the first American who gave his life for freedom. Thus perished Edmund Cheesman, Thomas Wilford and the noble William Drummond, martyrs to liberty. Nor is it certain when the vengeful tyrant would have stayed his hand, had not the assembly met and passed an edict that no more blood should be spilt for past offences. One of the burgesses from the county of Northampton said in the debate that if the governor were let alone he would hang half the country. When Charles II. heard of Berkeley's ferocity, he exclaimed, "The old fool has taken

away more lives in that naked country than I for the murder of my father"; and the saying was true.

The history of this insurrection was for a long time recited by Bacon's enemies. Until the present century no one appeared to rescue the leader's name from obloquy. In the light of after times his character will shine with a peculiar lustre. His motives were as exalted as his life was pure, and his virtues as noted as his abilities were great. His ambition was for the public welfare, and his passions were only excited against the enemies of his country.

The consequences of the rebellion were very disastrous. Berkeley and the aristocratic party had now a good excuse for suppressing all liberal sentiments and tendencies. The printing-press was interdicted. Education was discouraged or forbidden. To speak or to write anything against the administration or in defence of the late insurrection was made a crime to be punished by fine or whipping. If the offence should be three times repeated, it was declared to be treason punishable with death. The former tyrannical methods of taxation were revived, and Virginia was left at the mercy of arbitrary rulers.

In 1675, Lord Culpepper, to whom with Arlington the province had been granted two years previously, obtained the appointment of governor for life. The right of the king was thus by his own act relinquished, and Virginia became a proprietary government. The new executive arrived in 1680 and assumed the duties of his office. His whole administration was characterized by avarice and dishonesty. Regarding Virginia as his personal estate, he treated the Virginians as his tenants and slaves. Every species of extortion was resorted to, until the mutterings of rebellion were again heard throughout the impoverished colony. In 1683, Arlington surrendered his claim to Culpepper, who thus became sole proprietor as well as governor; but before he could proceed to further mischief, his official career was cut short by the act of the king. Charles II., repenting of his own rashness, found in Culpepper's vices and frauds a sufficient excuse to remove him from office and to revoke his patent. In 1684, Virginia again became a royal province, under the government of Lord Howard, of Effingham, who was succeeded by Francis Nicholson, formerly governor of New York. His administration was signalized by the founding of WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE, so named in honor of the new sovereigns of England. This, next to Harvard, was the first institution of liberal learning planted in America. Here the boy Jefferson, author of the Declaration of Independence, shall be educated! From these halls, in the famous summer of 1776, shall be sent forth young James Monroe, future President of the United States!

11. **Gustavus Adolphus the Great.** 89. J
Grotius.
- Galileo. 18. The Thirty Years' War begins.
Kepler. 48. Peace of Westphalia.
24-42. Richelieu. 43. **Louis XIV.** 85. Revoc
87. Hal
- Shakespeare.** **Milton.** **Locke.**
88. S
88. W
of Mary,
- Bacon.** 49. **Cromwell.**
3. James VI. } 25. Charles I. 42. The Revolution. 60. The Restoration.
James I. } 60. Charles II. 85. Ja
9. Second Charter granted. 42. Berkeley's administration. 76. Bacon's Rebel
: 12. The Third Charter. 44. Indian massacre. 77. Virginia be
: 19. House of Burgesses established. 84. Royal
7. : **VIRGINIA** colonized by the London 51. First Navigation Act. 83. Seth I
: Company at Jamestown. :
: 24. Dissolution of the 50. **NORTH CAROLINA** settled by the E
: London Company. : 63. Grant made to Lord Claren
: : 85. Sir
: 19. Introduction of Slavery. : 65. Sir John Yeamans, go
: John Smith, governor. : 77. Culpepper's
34. : **MARYLAND** settled by the Catho- 9
: lies under Lord Baltimore. 75. Charles Cal
: 39. Representative government established.
38. Governor Kief. 64. Taken by the English. 9
14. **NEW YORK** settled by the Dutch. Berkeley and Carteret.
47. Stuyvesant. 70. Lovelace.
56. New York City founded. 74. E
25. Minnits, governor.
38. Wilmington settled by the Swedes. 82. **DELA**
23. **NEW JERSEY** settled by the Dutch. 81. First Ger
29. **NEW HAMPSHIRE** settled. 79. New Hampsh
as a distinct col
30. Boston founded.
30. : **MAINE** settled. : 76. King Philip's
20. **MASSACHUSETTS** settled by the Puritans at Plymouth. 84. M
30. Winthrop, governor. 90.
38. Harvard College founded. 90.
39. First printing-press set up at Cambridge. 92
36. : **RHODE ISLAND** settled by Roger Williams.
: 39. Newport founded. 87. R
37. Pequot War. 89. T
30. : **CONNECTICUT** granted to the earl of Warwick.
: 35. Saybrook founded.
: 33. Hartford founded. 62. New charter granted.
70. : **SOUTH CARO**
: Locke's Constitutio
: 86. Arr
82. : **PE**
: th
: 30

COLONIAL PERIOD
A. D. 1607 - 1776.

reat. XII. the Spanish Succession.	40. Frederick the Great. 40. War of the Austrian Succession terminated by 48. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.	62. Catharine II.
13. Peace of Utrecht. Nantes.	Voltaire.	89. French Revolution.
15. Louis XV.	Dr. Johnson.	93. Reign of Terror.
for. ry, and after the death .	65. The Rockingham Ministry. Chatham.	Burke.
	55. War between France and England. 65. The Stamp Act.	Pitt. Fox.
14. George I.	60. George III.	
ary government established.	32. Birth of Washington.	65. The Virginia: Resolutions.
Arrival of the German immigrants.		
e, governor. 11. The Corree War.	29. Final separation of the Carolinas.	
mes a royal government.		
ley.		
governor. I. Cornbury.	44. Negro plot.	58. Fall of Louisburg.
ont.	32. Cosby, governor.	65. Declaration of Rights.
	54. French and Indian War.	
	65. First Colonial Congress assembles at New York.	
from New York.		
East and West Jersey.	Dr. Benjamin Franklin.	
	38. Royal government established.	
ith Massachusetts.	41. New Hampshire finally sepa- rated from Mass.	67. The tea tax.
20. Introduction of tea.		61. Writs of Assistance.
		73. The Boston "Tea Party."
d newspaper. her charter. per money 's War. n Anne's War. 0. First post-office.	44. King George's War.	75. Lexington.
	45. Louisburg taken.	74. Boston Port Bill.
	59. Quebec taken.	68. General Gage arrives in Boston.
	75. Bunker Hill.	70. Tumult in Boston.
charter.		
College founded.		
the English.		
pedition against St. Augustine. enots.	29. Royal government established.	
settled by Penn. ommission.	55. Braddock's defeat.	76. Independence.
	74. Second Congress assem- bles at Philadelphia.	
	33. GEORGIA settled by the English under Oglethorpe.	
	52. Royal government established.	

After Nicholson's administration, Sir Edmund Andros, recently expelled by the people of Massachusetts, assumed for a while the government of Virginia. The affairs of the colony during the next forty or fifty years are not of sufficient interest and importance to require extended notice in an abridgment of American history. At the outbreak of the French and Indian War, Virginia will show to the world that the labors of Smith, and Gosnold, and Bacon have not been in vain.

CHAPTER XIII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—SETTLEMENT.

THE spring of 1621 brought a ray of hope to the distressed Pilgrims of New Plymouth. Never was the returning sun more welcome. The fatal winter had swept off one-half of the number. The son of the benevolent Carver was among the first victims of the terrible climate. The governor himself sickened and died, and the broken-hearted wife found rest in the same grave with her husband. But now, with the approach of warm weather, the destroying pestilence was stayed, and the spirits of the survivors revived with the season. Out of the snows of winter, the desolations of disease, and the terrors of death the faith of the Puritan had come forth triumphant.

For a while the colonists were apprehensive of the Indians. In February, Miles Standish was sent out with his soldiers to gather information of the numbers and disposition of the natives. The army of New England consisted of six men besides the general. Deserted wigwams were found here and there; the smoke of camp-fires arose in the distance; savages were occasionally seen in the forest. These fled, however, at the approach of the English, and Standish returned to Plymouth.

A month later the colonists were astonished by the sudden appearance in their midst of a Wampanoag Indian named Samoset. He ran into the village, offered his hand in token of friendship, and bade the strangers welcome. He gave an account of the numbers and strength of the neighboring tribes, and recited the story of a great plague by which, a few years before, the country had been swept of its inhabitants. The present feebleness and desolate condition of the natives had resulted from the fatal malady. Another Indian, by the name of Squanto, who had been carried away by Hunt in 1614, and had learned to speak English, came also to Plymouth, and confirmed what Samoset had said.

By the influence of these two natives friendly relations were at once established with the Wampanoags. Massasoit, the great sachem of the nation, was invited to visit the settlement, and came attended by a few of his warriors. The Pilgrims received him with as much parade and ceremony as the colony could provide; Captain Standish ordered out his soldiers, and Squanto acted as interpreter. Then and there was ratified the first treaty made in New England. The terms were few and simple. There should be peace and friendship between the whites and the red men. No injury should be done by either party to the other. All offenders should be given up to be punished. If the English engaged in



THE TREATY BETWEEN GOVERNOR CARVER AND MASSASOIT.

war, Massasoit should help them; if the Wampanoags were attacked unjustly, the English should give aid against the common enemy. Mark that word *unjustly*: it contains the essence of Puritanism.

The treaty thus made and ratified remained inviolate for fifty years. Other chiefs followed the example of the great sachem and entered into friendly relations with the colony. Nine of the leading tribes acknowledged the sovereignty of the English king. One chieftain threatened hostilities, but Standish's army obliged him to beg for mercy. Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts, sent to William Bradford, who had been chosen governor after the death of Carver, a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake; but the undaunted governor stuffed the skin with

powder and balls and sent it back to the chief, who did not dare to accept the dangerous challenge. The hostile emblem was borne about from tribe to tribe, until finally it was returned to Plymouth.

The summer of 1621 was unfruitful, and the Pilgrims were brought to the point of starvation. To make their condition still more grievous, a new company of immigrants, without provisions or stores, arrived, and were quartered on the colonists during the fall and winter. For six months together the settlers were obliged to subsist on half allowance. At one time only a few grains of parched corn remained to be distributed, and at another there was absolute destitution. In this state of affairs some English fishing-vessels came to Plymouth and charged the starving colonists two prices for food enough to keep them alive.

The intruding immigrants just mentioned had been sent to America by Thomas Weston, of London, one of the projectors of the colony. They remained with the people of Plymouth until the summer of 1622, then removed to the south side of Boston Harbor and began a new settlement called Weymouth. Instead of working with their might to provide against starvation, they wasted the fall in idleness, and attempted to keep up their stock of provisions by defrauding the Indians. Thus provoked to hostility, the natives formed a plan to destroy the colony; but Massasoit, faithful to his pledges, went to Plymouth and revealed the plot. Standish marched to Weymouth at the head of his regiment, now increased to eight men, attacked the hostile tribe, killed several warriors and carried home the chief's head on a pole. The tender-hearted John Robinson wrote from Leyden: "I would that you had converted some of them before you killed any."

In the following spring most of the Weymouth settlers abandoned the place and returned to England. The summer of 1623 brought a plentiful harvest to the people of the older colony, and there was no longer any danger of starvation. The natives, preferring the chase, became dependent on the settlement for corn, and furnished in exchange an abundance of game. The main body of Pilgrims still tarried at Leyden. Robinson made unwearied efforts to bring his people to America, but the adventurers of London who had managed the enterprise would provide no further means either of money or transportation; and now, at the end of the fourth year, there were only a hundred and eighty persons in New England. The managers had expected profitable returns, and were disappointed. They had expended thirty-four thousand dollars; there was neither profit nor the hope of any. Under this discouragement the proprietors made a proposition to sell out their claims to the colonists. The offer was accepted; and in November of 1627 eight of the leading

men of Plymouth purchased from the Londoners their entire interest for the sum of nine thousand dollars.

Before this transfer of right was made the colony had been much vexed by the efforts of the managers to thrust on them a minister of the Established Church. Was it not to avoid this very thing that they had come to the wilds of the New World? Should the tyranny of the prelates follow them even across the sea and into the wilderness? There was dissension and strife for a while; the English managers withheld support; oppression was resorted to; the stores intended for the colonists were sold to them at three prices; and they were obliged to borrow money at sixty per cent. But no exactions could break the spirit of the Pilgrims; and the conflict ended with the purchase of whatever rights the London proprietors had in the colony.

The year 1624 was marked by the founding of a settlement at Cape Ann. John White, a Puritan minister of Dorchester, England, collected a small company of emigrants and sent them to America. The colony was established, but after two years of discouragement the cape was abandoned as a place unsuitable, and the company moved farther south to Naumkeag, afterward called Salem. Here a settlement was begun, and in 1628 was made permanent by the arrival of a second colony, in charge of John Endicott, who was chosen governor. In March of the same year the colonists obtained a patent from the Council of Plymouth; and in 1629 Charles I. issued a charter by which the proprietors were incorporated under the name of THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND. In July two hundred additional immigrants arrived, half of whom settled at Plymouth, while the other half removed to a peninsula on the north side of Boston Harbor and laid the foundation of Charlestown.

At the first it had been decided that the charter of the colony should be left in England, and that the governor should reside there also. After further discussion, this decision was reversed, and in September it was decreed that the whole government should be transferred to America, and that the charter, as a pledge of liberty, should be entrusted to the colonists themselves. As soon as this liberal action was made known emigration began on an extensive scale. In the year 1630 about three hundred of the best Puritan families in the kingdom came to New England. Not adventurers, not vagabonds, were these brave people, but virtuous, well-educated, courageous men and women who for conscience' sake left comfortable homes with no expectation of returning. It was not the least of their good fortune to choose a noble leader.

If ever a man was worthy to be held in perpetual remembrance,

that man was John Winthrop, governor of Massachusetts. Born a royalist, he cherished the principles of republicanism. Himself an Episcopalian, he chose affliction with the Puritans. Surrounded with affluence and comfort, he left all to share the destiny of the persecuted Pilgrims. Calm, prudent and peaceable, he joined the zeal of an enthusiast with the sublime faith of a martyr.



JOHN WINTHROP.

A part of the new immigrants settled at Salem; others at Cambridge and Watertown, on Charles River; while others, going farther south, founded Roxbury and Dorchester. The governor, with a few of the leading families, resided for a while at Charlestown, but soon crossed the harbor to the peninsula of Shawmut and laid the foundation of Boston, which became henceforth the capital of the colony and the metropolis of New England. With the approach of winter sickness came, and the distress was very great. Many of the new-comers were refined and tender people who could not endure the bitter blasts of Massachusetts Bay. Coarse fare and scanty provisions added to the griefs of disease. Sleet and snow drifted through the cracks of the thin board huts where enfeebled men and delicate women moaned out their lives. Before mid-winter two hundred had perished. A few others, heartsick and despairing, returned to England; but there was heard neither murmur nor repining. Governor Winthrop wrote to his wife: "I like so well to be here that I do not repent my coming."

At a session of the general court of the colony, held in 1631, a law was passed restricting the right of suffrage. It was enacted that none but

members of the church should be permitted to vote at the colonial elections. The choice of governor, deputy-governor and assistant councilors was thus placed in the hands of a small minority. Nearly three-fourths of the people were excluded from exercising the rights of freemen. Taxes were levied for the support of the gospel; oaths of obedience to the magistrates were required; attendance on public worship was enforced by law; none but church-members were eligible to offices of trust. It is strange indeed that the very men who had so recently, through perils by sea and land, escaped with only their lives to find religious freedom in another continent, should have begun their career with intolerance and proscription. The only excuse that can be found for the gross inconsistency and injustice of such legislation is that bigotry was the vice of the age rather than of the Puritans.

One manly voice was lifted up against this odious statute. It was the voice of young ROGER WILLIAMS, minister of Salem. To this man belongs the shining honor of being first in America or in Europe to proclaim the full gospel of religious toleration. He declared to his people that the conscience of man may in no wise be bound by the authority of the magistrate; that civil government has only to do with civil matters, such as the collection of taxes, the restraint and punishment of crime, and the protection of all men in the enjoyment of equal rights. For these noble utterances he was obliged to quit the ministry of the church at Salem and retire to Plymouth. Finally, in 1634, he wrote a paper in which the declaration was made that grants of land, though given by the king of England, were invalid until the natives were justly recompensed. This was equivalent to saying that the colonial charter itself was void, and that the people were really living upon the lands of the Indians. Great excitement was occasioned by the publication, and Williams consented that for the sake of public peace the paper should be burned. But he continued to teach his doctrines, saying that compulsory attendance at religious worship, as well as taxation for the support of the ministry, was contrary to the teachings of the gospel. When arraigned for these bad doctrines, he crowned his offences by telling the court that a test of church-membership in a voter or a public officer was as ridiculous as the selection of a doctor of physic or the pilot of a ship on account of his skill in theology.

These assertions raised such a storm in court that Williams was condemned for heresy and banished from the colony. In the dead of winter he left home and became an exile in the desolate forest. For fourteen weeks he wandered on through the snow, sleeping at night on the ground or in a hollow tree, living on parched corn, acorns and roots. He

carried with him one precious treasure—a private letter from Governor Winthrop, giving him words of cheer and encouragement. Nor did the Indians fail to show their gratitude to the man who had so nobly defended their rights. In the country of the Wampanoags he was kindly entertained. Massasoit invited him to his cabin at Pokanoket, and



ROGER WILLIAMS' RECEPTION BY THE INDIANS.

Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts, received him as a friend and brother. On the left bank of Blackstone River, near the head of Narragansett Bay, a resting-place was at last found; the exile pitched his tent, and with the opening of spring planted a field and built the first house in the village of Seekonk. Soon the information came that he was still within the territory of Plymouth colony, and another removal became necessary. With five companions who had joined him in banishment, he embarked in a canoe, passed down the river and crossed to the west side of the bay. Here he was safe; his enemies could hunt him no farther. A tract of land was honorably purchased from Canonicus; and in June of 1636, the illustrious founder of Rhode Island laid out the city of PROVIDENCE.

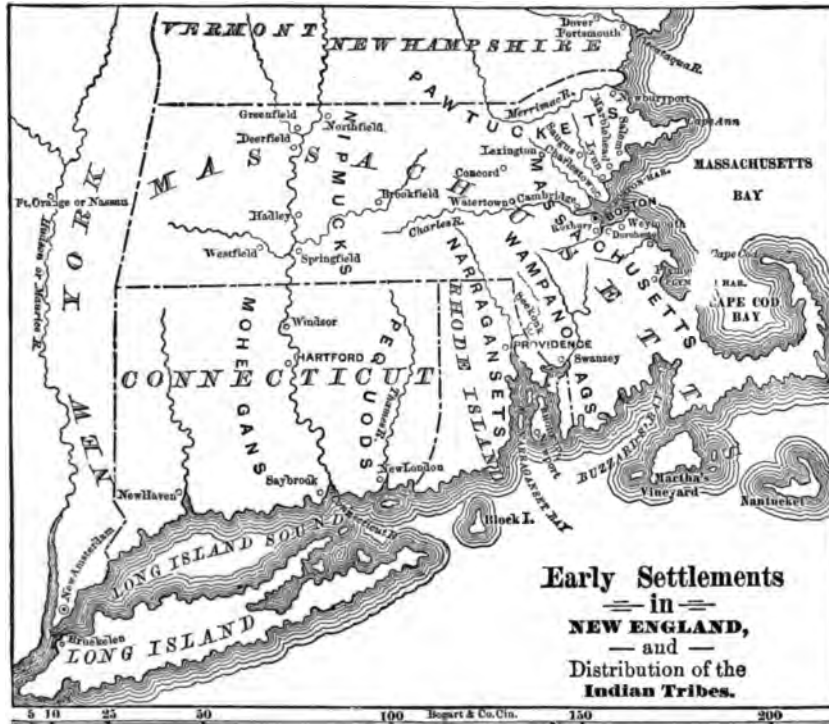
Meanwhile, his teachings were bearing fruit in Massachusetts. In 1634 a representative form of government was established against the opposition of the clergy. On election-day the voters, now numbering between three and four hundred, were called together, and the learned

Cotton preached powerfully and long against the proposed change. The assembly listened attentively, and then went on with the election. To make the reform complete, a BALLOT-BOX was substituted for the old method of public voting. The restriction on the right of suffrage was the only remaining bar to a perfect system of self-government in New England.

During the next year three thousand new immigrants arrived. It was worth while—so thought the people of England—to come to a country where the principles of freedom were spreading with such rapidity. The new-comers were under the leadership of Hugh Peters and Sir Henry Vane; the former the Puritan pastor of some English exiles at Rotterdam, in Holland, and the latter a young nobleman who afterward played an important part in the history of England. Such was his popularity with the people of Massachusetts, and such his zeal and piety, that in less than a year after his arrival he was chosen governor of the colony.

By this time the settlements around Massachusetts Bay were thickly clustered. Until new homes should be found there was no room for the immigrants who were constantly coming. To enlarge the frontier, to plunge into the wilderness and find new places of abode, became a necessity. One little company of twelve families, led by Simon Willard and Peter Bulkeley, marched through the woods until they came to some open meadows sixteen miles from Boston, and there laid the foundations of Concord. A little later in the same year, another colony of sixty persons left the older settlements and pressed their way westward as far as the Connecticut River. The march itself was a grievous hardship, but greater toils and sufferings were in store for the adventurous company. A dreadful winter overtook them in their new homes but half provided. Some died; others, disheartened, waded back through the dreary untrodden snows and came half famished to Plymouth and Boston; but the rest, with true Puritan heroism, outbraved the winter and triumphed over the pangs of starvation. Spring brought a recompense for hardship: the heroic pioneers crept out of their miserable huts to become the founders of Windsor, HARTFORD and Wethersfield, the oldest towns in the Connecticut valley.

The banishment of Roger Williams, instead of bringing peace, brought strife and dissension to the people of Massachusetts. The ministers were stern and exacting. Every shade of popular belief was closely scrutinized; the slightest departure from orthodox doctrines was met with a charge of heresy, and to be a heretic was to become an outcast. Still, the advocates of free opinion multiplied. The clergy, notwithstanding their great influence among the people, felt insecure. Religious de-



MAP OF EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN NEW ENGLAND.

bates became the order of the day. Every sermon had to pass the ordeal of review and criticism.

Most prominent among those who were said to be "as bad as Roger Williams, or worse," was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a woman of genius who had come over in the ship with Sir Henry Vane. She desired the privilege of speaking at the weekly debates, and was refused. Women had no business at these assemblies, said the elders. Indignant at this, she became the champion of her sex, and declared that the ministers who were defrauding women of the gospel were no better than Pharisees. She called meetings of her friends, spoke much in public, and pleaded with great fervor for the full freedom of conscience. The liberal doctrines of the exiled Williams were reaffirmed with more power and eloquence than ever. Many of the magistrates were converted to the new beliefs; the governor himself espoused the cause of Mrs. Hutchinson; and a majority of the people of Boston inclined to her opinions.

For a while there was a reign of discord; but as soon as Sir Henry's term of office expired a call was issued for a meeting of the synod of New England. The body convened in August of 1637; a

decree was proposed; Mrs. Hutchinson and her friends were declared unfit for the society of Christians, and banished from the territory of Massachusetts. With a large number of friends the exiles wended their way toward the home of Roger Williams. Miantonomoh, a Narragansett chieftain, made them a gift of the beautiful island of Rhode Island; there, in the month of March, 1641, a little republic was established, in whose constitution freedom of conscience was guaranteed and persecution for opinion's sake forbidden.

The year 1636 was an important epoch in the history of Massachusetts. The general court of the colony passed an act appropriating between one and two thousand dollars to found and endow a college. The measure met with popular favor; the Puritans were an educated people, and were quick to appreciate the advantages of learning. Newtown was selected as the site of the proposed school. Plymouth and Salem gave gifts to help the enterprise; and from villages in the Connecticut valley came contributions of corn and wampum. In 1638, John Harvard, a young minister of Charlestown, died, bequeathing his library and nearly five thousand dollars to the school. To perpetuate the memory of the noble benefactor the new institution was named HARVARD COLLEGE; and in honor of the place where the leading men of Massachusetts had been educated, the name of Newtown was changed to Cambridge. Thus early did the people of New England stamp their approval on the cause of education. In spite of sterile soil and desolate landscapes—in spite of destroying climate and wasting diseases—in spite even of superstition and bigotry—the people who educate will ever be great and free.

The PRINTING-PRESS came also. In 1638, Stephen Daye, an English printer, arrived at Boston, bringing a font of types, and in the following year set up a press at Cambridge. The first American publication was an almanac calculated for New England, and bearing date of 1639. During the next year, Thomas Welde and John Eliot, two ministers of Roxbury, and Richard Mather, of Dorchester, translated the Hebrew Psalms into English verse, and published their rude work in a volume of three hundred pages—the first book printed on this side of the Atlantic.

The rapid growth of Massachusetts now became a source of alarm to the English government. Those liberal principles of religion and politics which were openly avowed and gloried in by the citizens of the new commonwealth were hateful to Charles I. and his ministers. The archbishop of Canterbury was much offended. Something must be done to check the further growth of the Puritan colonies. The first

measure which suggested itself was to stop emigration. For this purpose an edict was issued as early as 1634, but was of no effect. The officers of the government neglected to enforce the law. Four years later, more vigorous measures were adopted. A squadron of eight vessels, ready to sail from London, was detained by the royal authority. Many of the most prominent Puritan families in England were on board of these ships. Historians of high rank have asserted—but without sufficient proof—that John Hampden and Oliver Cromwell were of the number who were turned back by the detention. At all events, it would have been the part of wisdom in King Charles to allow all Puritans to leave his realm as fast as possible. By detaining them in England he only made sure the Revolution, and by so much hastened his own downfall.

CHAPTER XIV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—THE UNION.

NEW ENGLAND was fast becoming a nation. Wellnigh fifty towns and villages dotted the face of the country. Nearly a million of dollars had been spent in settling and developing the new State. Enterprises of all kinds were rife. Manufactures, commerce and the arts were rapidly introduced. William Stephens, a shipbuilder who came with Governor Winthrop to Boston, had already built and launched an American vessel of four hundred tons burden. Before 1640, two hundred and ninety-eight emigrant ships had anchored in Massachusetts Bay. Twenty-one thousand two hundred people, escaping from English intolerance of Church or State, had found home and rest between Plymouth Rock and the Connecticut valley. It is not wonderful that the colonists began to cast about them for better political organization and more ample forms of government.

Many circumstances impelled the colonies to union. First of all, there was the natural desire of men to have a regular and permanent government. England, torn and distracted with civil war, could do nothing for or against her colonies; they must take care of themselves. Here was the western frontier exposed to the hostilities of the Dutch towns on the Hudson; Connecticut alone could not defend herself. Similar trouble was apprehended from the French on the north; the

English settlements on the Piscataqua were weak and defenceless. Indian tribes capable of mustering a thousand warriors were likely at any hour to fall upon remote and helpless villages; the prevalence of common interests and the necessities of common defence made a union of some sort indispensable.

The first effort to consolidate the colonies was ineffectual. Two years later, in 1639, the project was renewed, but without success. Again, in 1643, a measure of union was brought forward and finally adopted. By the terms of this compact, Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven were joined in a loose confederacy, called THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND. The chief authority was conferred upon a general assembly, or congress, composed of two representatives from each colony. These delegates were chosen annually at an election where all the freemen voted by ballot. There was no president other than the speaker of the assembly, and he had no executive powers. Each community retained, as before, its separate local existence; and all subordinate questions of legislation were reserved to the respective colonies. Only matters of general interest—such as Indian affairs, the levying of troops, the raising of revenues, declarations of war and treaties of peace—were submitted to the assembly.

Provision was made for the admission of other colonies into the union, but none were ever admitted. The English settlement on the Piscataqua was rejected because of heterodoxy in religion. The Providence Plantations were refused for similar reasons. Should Roger Williams return to plague an assembly where an approved church-membership was the sole qualification for office? The little island of Rhode Island, with its Jewish republic, also knocked for admission; Anne Hutchinson's commonwealth was informed that Plymouth colony had rightful jurisdiction there, and that heresy was a bar to all petitions.

Until the year 1641 the people of Massachusetts had had no regular code of laws. At a meeting of the assembly in December of this year, Nathaniel Ward brought forward a written instrument which, after mature deliberation, was adopted as the constitution of the State. This fundamental statute was called the BODY OF LIBERTIES, and was ever afterward esteemed as the great charter of colonial freedom. It may be doubted whether any other primitive constitution, either ancient or modern, contains more wisdom than this early code of Massachusetts.

A further modification in the government was effected in 1644. Until this time the representatives of the people had sat and voted in the same hall with the governor and his assistant magistrates. It was now decreed that the two bodies should sit apart, each with its own officers

and under its own management. By this measure the people's branch of the legislature was made independent and of equal authority with the governor's council. Thus step by step were the safeguards of liberty established and regular forms of government secured.

The people of Massachusetts were little grieved on account of the English Revolution. It was for them a vindication and a victory. The triumph of Parliament over King Charles was the triumph of Puritanism both in England and America. Massachusetts had no cause to fear so long as the House of Commons was crowded with her friends and patrons. But in the hour of victory the American Puritans showed themselves more magnanimous than those of the mother-country; when Charles I., the enemy of all colonial liberties, was brought to the block, the people of New England, whose fathers had been exiled by *his* father, lamented his tragic fate and preserved the memory of his virtues.

During the supremacy of the Long Parliament several acts were passed which put in peril the interests of Massachusetts, but by a prudent and far-sighted policy all evil results were avoided. Powerful friends, especially Sir Henry Vane, stood up in Parliament and defended the colony against the intrigues of her enemies. Ambassadors, men of age and experience, went often to London to plead for colonial rights. Soon after the abolition of monarchy a statute was made which threatened for a while the complete subversion of the new State. Massachusetts was invited to surrender her charter, to receive a new instrument instead, and to hold courts and issue writs in the name of Parliament. The measure seemed fair enough, but the people of New England were too cautious to stake their all on the fate of a Parliament whose power was already waning. The requisition was never complied with. Cromwell did not insist on the surrender; no one else had power to enforce the act; and Massachusetts retained her charter.

The Protector was the constant friend of the American colonies. Even Virginia, though slighting his authority, found him just as well as severe. The people of New England were his special favorites. To them he was bound by every tie of political and religious sympathy. For more than ten years, when he might have been an oppressor, he continued the benefactor, of the English in America. During his administration the northern colonies were left in the full enjoyment of their coveted rights. In commerce, in the industry of private life, and especially in religion, the people of Massachusetts were as free as the people of England.

In the year 1652, it was decreed by the general court at Boston that the jurisdiction of the province extended as far north as three miles above the most northerly waters of the river Merrimac. This declaration,

which was in strict accordance with the charter of the colony, was made for the purpose of annexing Maine to Massachusetts. By this measure the territory of the latter State was extended to Casco Bay. Settlements had been made on the Piscataqua as early as 1626, but had not flourished. Thirteen years later a royal charter was issued to Sir Ferdinand Gorges, a member of the Council of Plymouth, who became proprietor of the province. His cousin, Thomas Gorges, was made deputy-governor. A high-sounding constitution, big enough for an empire, was drawn up, and the little village of Gorgeana, afterward York, became the capital of the kingdom. Meanwhile, in 1630, the Plymouth Council had granted to another corporation sixteen hundred square miles of the territory around Casco Bay, and this claim had been purchased by Rigby, a republican member of Parliament. Between his deputies and those of Gorges violent disputes arose. The villagers of Maine, sympathizing with neither party, and emulous of the growth and prosperity of the southern colonies, laid their grievances before the court at Boston, and the annexation of the province followed.

In July of 1656, the QUAKERS began to arrive at Boston. The first who came were Ann Austin and Mary Fisher. The introduction of the plague would have occasioned less alarm. The two women were caught and searched for marks of witchcraft, their trunks were broken open, their books were burned by the hangman, and they themselves thrown into prison. After several weeks' confinement they were brought forth and banished from the colony. Before the end of the year eight others had been arrested and sent back to England. The delegates of the union were immediately convened, and a rigorous law was passed, excluding all Quakers from the country. Whipping, the loss of one ear and banishment were the penalties for the first offence; after a second conviction the other ear should be cut off; and should the criminal again return, his tongue should be bored through with a red-hot iron.

In 1657, Ann Burden, who had come from London to preach against persecution, was seized and beaten with twenty stripes. Others came, were whipped and exiled. As the law became more cruel and proscriptive, fresh victims rushed forward to brave its terrors. The assembly of the four colonies again convened, and advised the authorities of Massachusetts to pronounce the penalty of death against the fanatical disturbers of the public peace. When the resolutions embodying this advice was put before the assembly, to his everlasting honor, the younger Winthrop, delegate from Connecticut, voted No! Massachusetts accepted the views of the greater number, and the death-penalty was passed by a majority of one vote.

In September of 1659, four persons were arrested and brought to trial under this law. The prisoners were given the option of going into exile or of being hanged. Two of them (Mary Dyar and Nicholas Davis) chose banishment; but the other two (Marmaduke Stephenson and William Robinson) stood firm, denounced the wickedness of the court, and were sentenced to death. Mary Dyar, in whom the love of martyrdom had triumphed over fear, now returned, and was also condemned. On the 27th of October the three were led forth to execution. The men were hanged without mercy; and the woman, after the rope had been adjusted to her neck, was reprieved only to be banished. She was conveyed beyond the limits of the colony, but immediately returned and was executed. William Leddra was next seized, tried and sentenced. As in the case of the others, he was offered perpetual exile instead of death. He refused, and was hanged.

Before the trial of Leddra was concluded, Wenlock Christison, who had already been banished, rushed into the court-room and began to upbraid the judges for shedding the blood of the innocent. When put on his second trial, he spoke boldly in his own defence; but the jury brought in a verdict of guilty, and he was condemned to die. Others, eager for the honor of martyrdom, came forward in crowds, and the jails were filled with voluntary prisoners. But before the day arrived for Christison's execution, the public conscience was aroused; the law was repealed, the prison-doors were opened, and Christison, with twenty-seven companions, came forth free. The bloody reign of proscription had ended, but not until four innocent enthusiasts had given their lives for liberty of conscience.

But let a veil be drawn over this sorrowful event. The history of all times is full of scenes of violence and wrong. It could not be expected that an American colony, founded by exiles, pursued with malice and beset with dangers, should be wholly exempt from the shame of evil deeds. The Puritans established a religious rather than a civil commonwealth; whatever put the faith of the people in peril seemed to them more to be dreaded than pestilence or death. To ward off heresy, even by destroying the heretic, seemed only a natural self-defence. A nobler lesson has been learned in the light of better times.

The English Revolution had now run its course. Cromwell was dead. The Commonwealth tottered and fell. Charles II. was restored to the throne of his ancestors. Tidings of the Restoration reached Boston on the 27th of July, 1660. In the same vessel that bore the news came Edward Whalley and William Goffe, two of the judges who had passed sentence of death on Charles I. It was now their turn to save their lives by flight. Governor Endicott received them with courtesy; the agents

Hudson not more than twenty-five thousand Indians; the English had increased to fully twice that number. A new generation had arisen who could not understand the validity of the old titles. The young warriors sighed for the freedom of their fathers' hunting-grounds. They looked with ever-increasing jealousy on the growth of English villages and the spread of English farms. The ring of the foreigner's axe had scared the game out of the forest, and the foreigner's net had scooped the fishes from the red man's river. Of all their ancient domain, the Wampanoags had nothing left but the two narrow peninsulas of Bristol and Tiverton, on the eastern coast of Narragansett Bay.

There were personal grievances also. While Alexander lived he had been arrested, tried by an English jury and imprisoned. He had caught his death-fever in a Boston jail. Another chieftain was apprehended in a similar way; and then the Indian witness who appeared at the trial was murdered for giving testimony. The perpetrators of this crime were seized by the English, convicted and hanged. Perhaps King Philip, if left to himself, would have still sought peace. He was not a rash man, and clearly foresaw the inevitable issue of the struggle. He hesitated, and was affected with great grief when the news came that an Englishman had been killed. But the young men of the tribe were thirsting for bloody revenge, and could no longer be restrained. The women and children were hastily sent across the bay and put under the

protection of Canonchet, king of the Narragansetts. On the 24th of June, 1675, the village of Swanzev was attacked; eight Englishmen were killed; and the alarm of war sounded through the colonies.

Within a week the militia of Plymouth, joined by volunteer companies from Boston, entered the enemy's country. A few Indians were overtaken and killed. The troops marched into the peninsula of Bristol, reached Mount Hope, and compelled Philip to fly for his life. With a band of fugitives numbering five or six hundred, he



FIRST SCENE OF KING PHILIP'S WAR.

escaped to Tiverton, on the eastern side of the bay. Here, a few days afterward, they were attacked; but lying concealed in a swamp, they beat back their assailants with considerable loss. The place was then sur-

They were not wanted at Boston. The people of Massachusetts knew very well that the establishment of this supreme judgeship in their midst was a flagrant violation of their chartered right of self-government. Before the commissioners landed the patent was put into the hands of a committee for safe keeping. A decree of the general court forbade the citizens to answer any summons issued by the royal judges. A powerful letter, full of loyalty and manly protests, was sent directly to the king. The commissioners became disgusted with the treatment which they received at the hands of the refractory colony, and repaired to Maine and New Hampshire. Here they were met with some marks of favor; but their official acts were disregarded and soon forgotten. In Rhode Island the judges were received with great respect, and their decisions accepted as the decisions of the king. The towns of Connecticut were next visited; but the people were cold and indifferent, and the commissioners retired. Meanwhile, the English monarch, learning how his grand judges had been treated, sent a message of recall, and before the end of the year they gladly left the country. After a gallant fight, Massachusetts had preserved her liberties. Left in the peaceable enjoyment of her civil rights, she entered upon a new career of prosperity which, for a period of ten years, was marked with no calamity.

CHAPTER XV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—KING PHILIP'S WAR.

MASSASOIT, the old sachem of the Wampanoags, died in 1662. For forty-one years he had faithfully kept the treaty made by himself with the first settlers at Plymouth. His elder son, Alexander, now became chief of the nation, but died within the year; and the chieftainship descended to the younger brother, PHILIP OF MOUNT HOPE. It was the fate of this brave and able man to lead his people in a final and hopeless struggle against the supremacy of the whites. Causes of war had existed for many years, and the time had come for the conflict.

The unwary natives of New England had sold their lands. The English were the purchasers; the chiefs had signed the deeds; the price had been fairly paid. Year by year the territory of the tribes had narrowed; the old men died, but the deeds remained and the lands could not be recovered. There were at this time in the country east of the

Captain Lathrop, with a company of eighty picked men, undertook the dangerous task of removing the stores to Hadley. A train of wagons, loaded with wheat and corn and guarded by the soldiers, left Deerfield on the 18th of September, and had proceeded five miles, when they were suddenly surrounded by eight hundred Indians who lay in ambush at the ford of a small creek. The whites fought desperately, and were killed almost to a man. Meanwhile, Captain Mosely, at the head of seventy militia, arrived, and the battle continued, the English retreating until they were reinforced by a band of a hundred and sixty English and Mohegans. The savages were then beaten back with heavy losses. The little stream where this fatal engagement occurred, was henceforth called Bloody Brook.

On the same day of the burning of Deerfield, Hadley was attacked while the people were at church. Everything was in confusion, and the barbarians had already begun their work of butchery, when the gray-haired General Goffe, who was concealed in the village, rushed forth from his covert, and by rallying and directing the flying people saved them from destruction. After the Indians had been driven into the woods, the aged veteran went back to his hiding-place, and was seen no more. Late in the autumn, a battle was fought at Springfield; the town was assaulted and most of the dwellings burned. Another attack was made on Hadley, and a large part of the village was left in ashes. Hatfield was the next object of savage vengeance; but here the English were found prepared, and the Indians were repulsed with heavy losses. The farms and the weaker settlements were now abandoned, and the people sought shelter in the stronger towns near the river.

Philip, finding that he could do no further harm on the northern frontier, gathered his warriors together and repaired to the Narragansetts. By receiving them, Canonchet openly violated his treaty with the English, but to refuse them was contrary to the savage virtues of his race. To share the dubious fate of Philip was preferred to the longer continuance of a hateful alliance with foreigners. The authorities of Massachusetts immediately declared war against the Narragansett nation, and Rhode Island was invaded by a thousand men under command of Colonel Josiah Winslow. It was the determination to crush the Wampanoags and the Narragansetts at one blow; the manner of defence adopted by the savages favored such an undertaking. In the middle of an immense cedar swamp, a short distance south-west of Kingston, in the county of Washington, the Indians collected to the number of three thousand. Into this place was gathered the whole wealth of the Narragansett nation. A village of wigwams extended over several acres of land that rose out

of the surrounding morasses. A fort was built on the island, and fortified with a palisade and a breastwork of felled timber. Here the savages believed themselves secure from assault. The English regiment arrived at the swamp at daybreak on the 19th of December, and struggling through the bogs, reached the fort at noonday. The attack was made immediately. The only entrance to the camp was by means of a fallen tree that lay from an opening in the palisade to the opposite bank of a pond.

Over this hazardous passage a brave few sprang forward, but were instantly swept off by the fire of the Indians. Another company, made cautious by the fate of their comrades, crept around the defences, until, finding a point unguarded, they charged straight into the enclosure. The work of death and destruction now began in earnest. The wigwams were set on fire, and the kindling



THIRD SCENE OF KING PHILIP'S WAR.

flames swept around the village. The yells of the combatants mingled with the roar of the conflagration. But the superior discipline and valor of the whites soon decided the battle. The Indians, attempting to escape from the burning fort, ran everywhere upon the loaded muskets of the English. A thousand warriors were killed and hundreds more were captured. Nearly all the wounded perished in the flames. There, too, the old men, the women and babes of the nation met the horrors of death by fire. The pride of the Narragansetts had perished in a day. But the victory was dearly purchased; eighty English soldiers, including six captains of the regiment, were killed, and a hundred and fifty others were wounded.

A few of the savages, breaking through the English lines, escaped. Led by Philip, they again repaired to the Nipmucks, and with the opening of spring the war was renewed with more violence than ever. As their fortunes declined the Indians grew desperate; they had nothing more to lose. Around three hundred miles of frontier, extending from Maine to the mouth of the Connecticut, there was massacre and devastation. Lancaster, Medfield, Groton and Marlborough were laid in ashes. Weymouth, within twenty miles of Boston, met the same fate. Everywhere were seen the traces of rapine and murder.

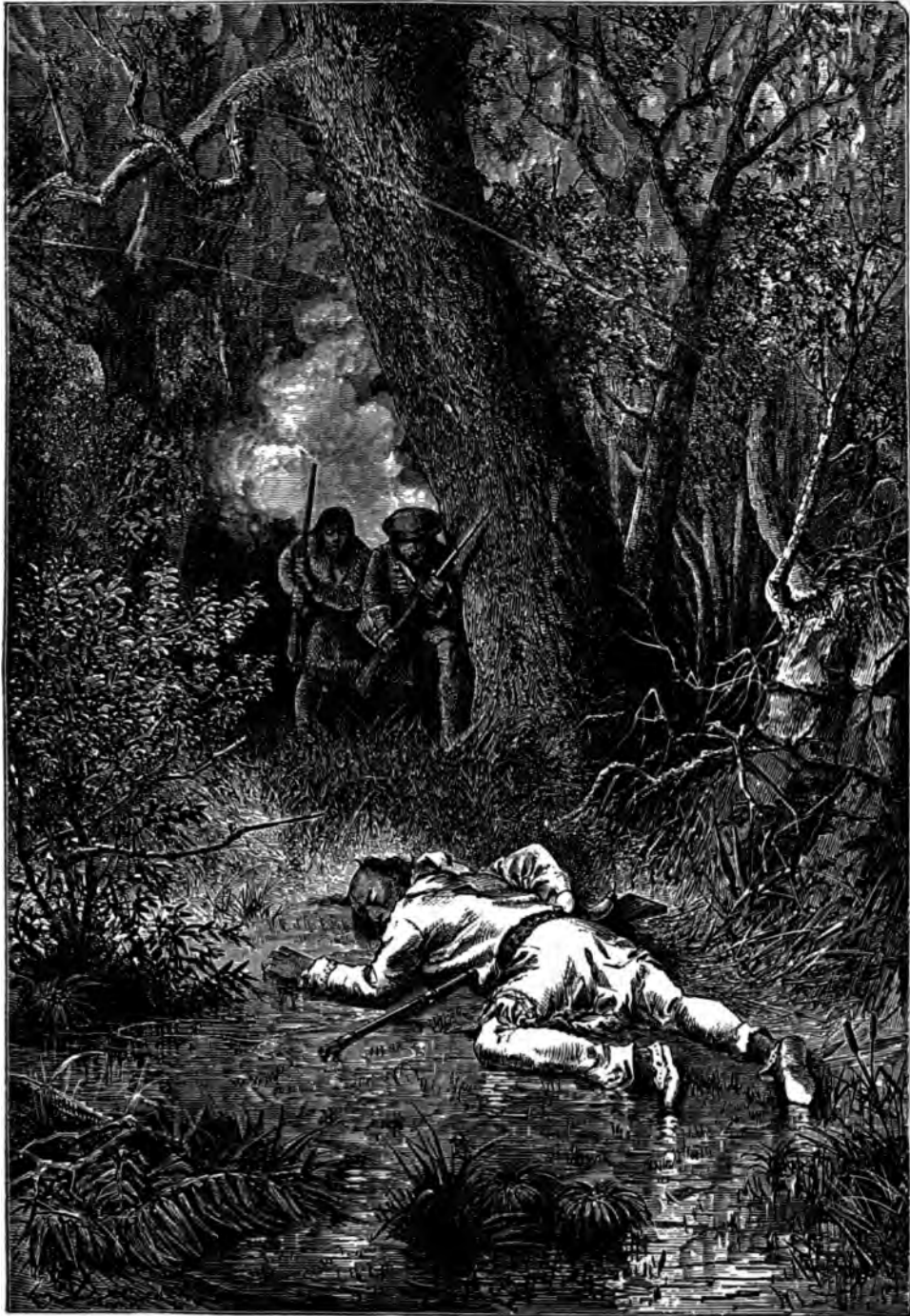
But the end was near at hand. The resources of the savages were wasted, and their numbers grew daily less. In April, Canonchet was overtaken and captured on the banks of the Blackstone. He was offered

his life if he would procure a treaty of peace; but the haughty chieftain rejected the proposal with disdain, and was put to death. Philip was still at large, but his company had dwindled to a handful. In the early summer, his wife and son were made prisoners; the latter was sold as a slave, and ended his life under the lash of a taskmaster in the Bermudas. The savage monarch was heartbroken now, and cared no longer for his life. Repairing secretly to his old home at Mount Hope, his place of concealment was revealed to the whites. A company of soldiers was sent to surround him. A treacherous Indian guided the party to the spot, and then himself, stealing nearer, took a deadly aim at the breast of his chieftain. The report of a musket rang through the forest, and the painted king of the Wampanoags sprang forward and fell dead.

New England suffered terribly in this war. The expenses and losses of the war amounted to fully five hundred thousand dollars. Thirteen towns and six hundred dwellings lay smouldering in ashes. Almost every family had heard the war-whoop of the savages. Six hundred men, the flower and pride of the country, had fallen in the field. Hundreds of families had been butchered in cold blood. Gray-haired sire, mother and babe had sunk together under the vengeful blow of the red man's gory tomahawk. Now there was peace again. The Indian race was swept out of New England. The tribes beyond the Connecticut came humbly submissive, and pleaded for their lives. The colonists returned to their desolated farms and villages to build new homes in the ashes of old ruins.

The echo of King Philip's war had hardly died away before the country was involved in troubles of a different sort. It had been expected that the English government would do something to repair the heavy losses which the colonists had sustained; but not so. Instead of help came Edward Randolph, a royal emissary, with authority to collect duties and abridge colonial liberties. Governor Leverett received him coldly, and told him in plain words that not even the king could rightfully restrict the freedom of his American subjects; that the people of the colonies had finished the Indian war without a cent of expense to the English treasury, and that they were now fairly entitled to the enjoyment of their chartered rights. After a six weeks' sojourn at Boston, Randolph sailed back to London, bearing to the ministry an exaggerated account of colonial arrogance. The king was already scheming to revoke all the New England charters; Randolph's reception furnished a further pretext for such a course of action.

The next trouble was concerning the jurisdiction of Maine. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, the old proprietor of that province, was now dead;



DEATH OF KING PHILIP.

but his heirs had never relinquished their claims to the territory. The people of Maine had meanwhile put themselves under the authority of Massachusetts; but the representatives of Gorges carried the matter before the privy council, and in 1677 a decision was rendered in their favor. Thereupon the Boston government made a proposition to the Gorges family to purchase their claims; the proposition was accepted, and on the 6th of May the heirs signed a deed by which, in consideration of twelve hundred and fifty pounds sterling, the soil and jurisdiction of the province were transferred to Massachusetts.

A similar difficulty arose in regard to New Hampshire. As far back as 1622 the Plymouth council had granted this territory to two of their own number—Gorges, just mentioned, and Captain John Mason. Seven years after the grant was made, Gorges surrendered his claim to Mason, who thus became sole proprietor. But this territory was also covered by the charter of Massachusetts. Mason died; and now, in 1679, his son Robert came forward and claimed the province. This cause was also taken before the ministers, who decided that the title of the younger Mason was valid. To the great disappointment of the people of both provinces, the two governments were arbitrarily separated. The king's policy was now made manifest. A royal government, the first in New England, was immediately established over New Hampshire; Mason nominated Edward Cranfield as governor, the king confirmed the appointment, and received in return one-fifth of all the rents.

But the people took care that the rents should not amount to much. They refused to recognize Cranfield's commission, and thwarted his plans in every way possible. Being in despair, he wrote to the English government that he would esteem it the greatest happiness to return home and leave the unreasonable people of New Hampshire to themselves. The king attributed all this trouble to the influence of Massachusetts. He could not forget how that commonwealth had treated his custom-house officer Randolph. The hostility of the English government to the existing order of things in New England became more bitter than ever. To carry out his plan of subverting the colonial governments, the king directed his judges to make an inquiry as to whether Massachusetts had not forfeited her charter. The proceedings were protracted until the summer of 1684, when the royal court gave a decision in accordance with the monarch's wishes. The patent was forfeited, said the judges; and the English crown might justly assume entire control of the colony. The plan of the king was thus on the point of realization, but the shadow of death was already at his door. On the 6th of February, 1685, his evil reign of twenty-five years ended with his life.

The new sovereign, James II., immediately adopted his brother's colonial policy. In the next year after his accession, the scheme so long entertained was successfully carried out. The charter of Massachusetts was formally revoked; all the colonies between Nova Scotia and Narragansett Bay were consolidated, and Joseph Dudley appointed president. New England was not prepared for open resistance; the colonial assembly was dissolved by its own act, and the members returned sullenly to their homes. In the winter following, Dudley was superseded by Sir Edmund Andros, who had been appointed royal governor of all New England. His commission ought to have been entitled *AN ARTICLE FOR THE DESTRUCTION OF COLONIAL LIBERTY*. If James II. had searched his kingdom, he could hardly have found a tool better fitted to do his will. The scarlet-coated despot landed at Boston on the 20th of December, and at once began the work of demolishing the cherished institutions of the people. Randolph was made chief secretary and censor of the press; nothing might be printed without his sanction. Popular representation was abolished. Voting by ballot was prohibited. Town meetings were forbidden. The Church of England was openly encouraged. The public schools were allowed to go to ruin. Men were arrested without warrant of law; and when as prisoners they arose in court to plead the privileges of the great English charter which had stood unquestioned for four hundred and fifty years, they were told that the Great Charter was not made for the perverse people of America. Dudley, who had been continued in office as chief-justice, was in the habit of saying to his packed juries, at the close of each trial: "Now, worthy gentlemen, we expect a good verdict from you to-day;" and the verdicts were rendered accordingly.

Thus did Massachusetts lose her liberty; and Plymouth fared no better. If the stronger colony fell prostrate, what could the weaker do? The despotism of Andros was quickly extended from Cape Cod Bay to the Piscataqua. New Hampshire was next invaded and her civil rights completely overthrown. Rhode Island suffered the same calamity. In May of 1686 her charter was taken away with a writ, and her constitutional rights subverted. Some of the colonists brought forward Indian deeds for their lands; the royal judges replied, with a sneer, that the signature of Massasoit was not worth as much as the scratch of a bear's paw. The seal of Rhode Island was broken, and an irresponsible council appointed to conduct the government. Attended by an armed guard, Andros proceeded to Connecticut. Arriving at Hartford in October of 1687, he found the assembly of the province in session, and demanded the surrender of the colonial charter. The instrument was brought in and laid upon the table. A spirited debate ensued, and continued until evening. When

it was about to be decided that the charter should be given up, the lamps were suddenly dashed out. Other lights were brought in; but the charter had disappeared. Joseph Wadsworth, snatching up the precious parchment, bore it off through the darkness and concealed it in a hollow tree, ever afterward remembered with affection as *THE CHARTER OAK*. But the assembly was overawed and the free government of Connecticut subverted. Thus was the authority of Andros established throughout the country. The people gave vent to their feelings by calling him *THE TYRANT OF NEW ENGLAND*.

But his dominion ended suddenly. The English Revolution of 1688 was at hand. James II. was driven from his throne and kingdom. The entire system of arbitrary rule which that monarch had established fell with a crash, and Andros with the rest. The news of the revolution and of the accession of William and Mary reached Boston on the 4th of April, 1689. A few days afterward, the governor had occasion to write a note to his colonel of militia, telling him to keep the soldiers under arms, as there was "a general buzzing among the people." On the 18th of the month, the citizens of Charlestown and Boston rose in open rebellion. Andros and his minions, attempting to escape, were seized and marched to prison. The insurrection spread through the country; and before the 10th of May every colony in New England had restored its former liberties.

CHAPTER XVI.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WAR AND WITCHCRAFT.

IN 1689, war was declared between France and England. This conflict, known in American history as *KING WILLIAM'S WAR*, grew out of the English Revolution of the preceding year. When James II. escaped from his kingdom, he found refuge at the court of Louis XIV. of France. The two monarchs were both Catholics, and both held the same despotic theory of government. On this account, and from other considerations, an alliance was made between them, by the terms of which Louis agreed to support James in his effort to recover the English throne. Parliament, meanwhile, had settled the crown on William of Orange. By these means the new sovereign was brought into conflict not only with the exiled James, but also with his confederate, the king of France.

The war which thus originated in Europe soon extended to the American colonies of the two nations; New England and New France entered the conflict under the flags of their respective countries.

The struggle began on the north-eastern frontier of New Hampshire. On the 27th of June, a party of Indians in alliance with the French made an attack on Dover. The venerable magistrate of the town, Richard Waldron, now eighty years of age, was inhumanly murdered. Twenty-three others were killed, and twenty-nine dragged off captive into the wilderness.

In August a war-party of a hundred Abenakis embarked in a fleet of canoes, floated out of the mouth of the Penobscot, and steered down the coast to Pemaquid, now Bremen. The inhabitants were taken by surprise; a company of farmers were surrounded in the harvest-field and murdered. The fort was besieged for two days and compelled to surrender. A few of the people escaped into the woods, but the greater number were killed or carried away captive. A month later an alliance was effected between the English and the powerful Mohawks west of the Hudson; but the Indians refused to make war upon their countrymen of Maine. The Dutch settlements of New Netherland, having now passed under the dominion of England, made common cause against the French.

In January of 1690 a regiment of French and Indians left Montreal and directed their march to the south. Crossing the Mohawk River, they arrived on the 8th of February at the village of Schenectady. Lying concealed in the forest until midnight, they stole through the unguarded gates, raised the war-whoop and began the work of death. The town was soon in flames. Sixty people were killed and scalped; the rest, escaping half clad into the darkness, ran sixteen miles through the snow to Albany. The settlement of Salmon Falls, on the Piscataqua, was next attacked and destroyed by a war-party led by the Frenchman Hertel. Joining another company from Quebec, under command of Portneuf, the savages proceeded against the colony at Casco Bay. The English fort at that place was taken and the settlements broken up. Thus far the fortunes of the war had been wholly on the side of the French and their allies.

But New England was now thoroughly aroused. In order to provide the ways and means of war, a colonial congress was convened at New York. Here it was resolved to attempt the conquest of Canada by marching an army by way of Lake Champlain against Montreal. At the same time, Massachusetts was to co-operate with the land forces by sending a fleet by way of the St. Lawrence for the reduction of Quebec. Thirty-four vessels, carrying two thousand troops, were accordingly fitted out, and the command given to Sir William Phipps. Proceeding first against Port

Royal, he compelled a surrender; the whole of Nova Scotia submitted without a struggle. If the commander had sailed at once against Quebec, that place too would have been forced to capitulate; but vexatious delays retarded the expedition until the middle of October. Meanwhile, an Abenaki Indian had carried the news of the coming armament to Frontenac, governor of Canada; and when the fleet came in sight of the town, the castle of St. Louis was so well garrisoned and provisioned as to bid defiance to the English forces. The opportunity was lost, and it only remained for Phipps to sail back to Boston. To meet the expenses of this unfortunate expedition, Massachusetts was obliged to issue bills of credit which were made a legal tender in the payment of debt. Such was the origin of PAPER MONEY in America.

Meanwhile, the land forces had proceeded from Albany as far as Lake Champlain. Here dissensions arose among the commanders. Colonel Leisler of New York charged Winthrop of Connecticut with treachery; and the charge was returned that Leisler's commissary had furnished no supplies for the Connecticut soldiers. The quarrel became so violent that the expedition had to be abandoned, and the troops marched gloomily homeward. The great campaign had resulted in complete humiliation.

Sir William Phipps had as little success in civil matters as in the command of a fleet. Shortly after his return from Quebec he was sent as ambassador to England. The objects of his mission were, in the first place, to procure aid from the English government in the further prosecution of the war; and secondly, to secure, if possible, a reissue of the old colonial charter. To the first of these requests the ministers replied that the armies and navies of England could not be spared to take part in a petty Indian war; and the second was met with coldness and refusal. King William was secretly opposed to the liberal provisions of the former charter, and looked with disfavor on the project of renewing it. It is even doubtful whether Phipps himself desired the restoration of the old patent; for when he returned to Boston in the spring of 1692, he bore a new instrument from the king, and a commission as royal governor of the province. By the terms of this new constitution, Plymouth, Maine and Nova Scotia were consolidated with Massachusetts; while New Hampshire, against the protests and petitions of her people, was forcibly separated from the mother colony.

The war still continued, but without decisive results. In 1694, the village of Oyster River, now Durham, was destroyed by a band of savages led by the French captain Villieu. The inhabitants, to the number of ninety-four, were either killed or carried into captivity. Two years later

the English fortress at Pemaquid was a second time surrendered to the French and Indians, under command of Baron Castin. The captives were sent to Boston and exchanged for prisoners in the hands of the English. In the following March, the town of Haverhill, on the Merrimac, was captured under circumstances of special atrocity. Nearly forty persons were butchered in cold blood; only a few were spared for captivity. Among the latter was Mrs. Hannah Dustin. Her child, only a week old, was snatched out of her arms and dashed against a tree. The heartbroken mother, with her nurse and a lad named Leonardson, from Worcester, was taken by the savages to an island in the Merrimac, a short distance above Concord. Here, while their captors, twelve in number, were asleep at night, the three prisoners arose, silently armed themselves with tomahawks, and with one deadly blow after another crushed in the temples of the sleeping savages, until ten of them lay still in death; then, embarking in a canoe, the captives dropped down the river and reached the English settlement in safety. Mrs. Dustin carried home with her the gun and tomahawk of the savage who had destroyed her family, and a bag containing the scalps of her neighbors. It is not often that the mother of a murdered babe has found such ample vengeance.

But the war was already at an end. Early in 1697, commissioners of France and England assembled at the town of Ryswick, in Holland; and on the 10th of the following September, a treaty of peace was concluded. King William was acknowledged as the rightful sovereign of England, and the colonial boundary-lines of the two nations in America were established as before.

Massachusetts had in the mean time been visited with a worse calamity than war. The darkest page in the history of New England is that which bears the record of the SALEM WITCHCRAFT. The same town which fifty-seven years previously had cast out Roger Williams was now to become the scene of the most fatal delusion of modern times. In February of 1692, in that part of Salem afterward called Danvers, a daughter and a niece of Samuel Parris, the minister, were attacked with a nervous disorder which rendered them partially insane. Parris believed, or affected to believe, that the two girls were bewitched, and that Tituba, an Indian maid-servant of the household, was the author of the affliction. He had seen her performing some of the rude ceremonies of her own religion, and this gave color to his suspicions. He tied Tituba, and whipped the ignorant creature until, at his own dictation, she confessed herself a witch. Here, no doubt, the matter would have ended had not other causes existed for the continuance and spread of the miserable delusion.

But Parris had had a quarrel in his church. A part of the congregation desired that George Burroughs, a former minister, should be reinstated, to the exclusion of Parris. Burroughs still lived at Salem; and there was great animosity between the partisans of the former and the present pastor. Burroughs disbelieved in witchcraft, and openly expressed his contempt of the system. Here, then, Parris found an opportunity to turn the confessions of the foolish Indian servant against his enemies, to overwhelm his rival with the superstitions of the community, and perhaps to have him put to death. There is no doubt whatever that the whole murderous scheme originated in the personal malice of Parris.

But there were others ready to aid him. First among these was the celebrated Cotton Mather, minister of Boston. He, being in high repute for wisdom, had recently preached much on the subject of witchcraft, teaching the people that witches were dangerous and ought to be put to death. He thus became the natural confederate of Parris, and the chief author of the terrible scenes that ensued. Sir William Phipps, the royal governor, who had just arrived from England, was a member of Mather's church. Increase Mather, the father of Cotton, had nominated Phipps to his present office. Stoughton, the deputy-governor, who was appointed judge and presided at the trials of the witches, was the tool of Parris and the two Mathers. To these men, more especially to Parris and Mather, must be charged the full infamy of what followed.

By the laws of England witchcraft was punishable with death. The code of Massachusetts was the same as that of the mother-country. In the early history of the colony, one person charged with being a wizard had been arrested at Charlestown, convicted and executed. But with the progress and enlightenment of the people, many had grown bold enough to denounce and despise the baleful superstition. Something, therefore, had to be done to save the tottering fabric of witchcraft from falling into contempt. A special court was accordingly appointed by Governor Phipps to go to Salem and to sit in judgment on the persons accused by Parris. Stoughton was the presiding judge, Parris himself the prosecutor, and Cotton Mather a kind of bishop to decide when the testimony was sufficient to condemn.

On the 21st of March, the horrible proceedings began. Mary Cory was arrested, not indeed for being a witch, but for denying the reality of witchcraft. When brought before the church and court, she denied all guilt, but was convicted and hurried to prison. Sarah Cloyce and Rebecca Nurse, two sisters of the most exemplary lives, were next apprehended as witches. The only witnesses against them were Tituba, her half-witted Indian husband and the simple girl Abigail Williams, the niece

of Parris. The victims were sent to prison, protesting their innocence. Giles Cory, a patriarch of eighty years, was next seized; he also was one of those who had opposed Parris. The Indian accuser fell down before Edward Bishop, pretending to be in a fit under satanic influence; the sturdy farmer cured him instantly with a sound flogging, and said that he could restore the rest of the afflicted in the same manner. He and his wife were immediately arrested and condemned. George Burroughs, the rival of Parris, was accused and hurried to prison. And so the work went on, until seventy-five innocent people were locked up in dungeons. Not a solitary partisan of Parris or Mather had been arrested.

In the hope of saving their lives, some of the terrified prisoners now began to confess themselves witches, or bewitched. It was soon found that a confession was almost certain to procure liberation. It became evident that the accused were to be put to death, not for being witches or wizards, but for denying the reality of witchcraft. The special court was already in session; convictions followed fast; the gallows stood waiting for its victims. The truth of Mather's preaching was to be established by hanging whoever denied it; and Parris was to save his pastorate by murdering his rival. When the noble Burroughs mounted the scaffold, he stood composedly and repeated correctly the test-prayer which it was said no wizard could utter. The people broke into sobs and moans, and would have rescued their friend from death; but the tyrant Mather dashed among them on horseback, muttering imprecations, and drove the hangman to his horrid work. Old Giles Cory, seeing that conviction was certain, refused to plead, *and was pressed to death*. Five women were hanged in one day. Between the 10th of June and the 22d of September, twenty victims were hurried to their doom. Fifty-five others had been tortured into the confession of abominable falsehoods. A hundred and fifty lay in prison awaiting their fate. Two hundred were accused or suspected, and ruin seemed to impend over New England. But a reaction at last set in among the people. Notwithstanding the vociferous clamor and denunciations of Mather, the witch tribunals were overthrown. The representative assembly convened early in October, and the hated court which Phipps had appointed to sit at Salem was at once dismissed. The spell was dissolved. The thralldom of the popular mind was broken. Reason shook off the terror that had oppressed it. The prison doors were opened, and the victims of malice and superstition went forth free. In the beginning of the next year a few persons charged with witchcraft were again arraigned and brought before the courts. Some were even convicted, but the conviction went for nothing; not another life was sacrificed to passion and fanaticism.

Most of those who had participated in the terrible deeds of the preceding summer confessed the great wrong which they had done; but confessions could not restore the dead. The bigoted Mather, in a vain attempt to justify himself before the world, wrote a treatise in which he expressed his great thankfulness that so many witches had met their just doom. It is not the least humiliating circumstance of this sad business that Mather's hypocritical and impudent book received the approbation of the president of Harvard College. In all this there is to the American student one consoling reflection—the pages of his country's history will never again be blotted with so dark a stain.

CHAPTER XVII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WARS OF ANNE AND GEORGE.

THE peace which followed the treaty of Ryswick was of short duration. Within less than four years France and England were again involved in a conflict which, beginning in Europe, soon extended to the American colonies. In the year 1700, Charles II., king of Spain, died, having named as his successor Philip of Anjou, a grandson of Louis XIV. This measure pointed clearly to a union of the crowns of France and Spain. The jealousy of all Europe was aroused; a league was formed between England, Holland and Austria; the archduke Charles of the latter country was put forward by the allied powers as a candidate for the Spanish throne; and war was declared against Louis XIV. for supporting the claims of Philip.

England had against France another cause of offence. In September of 1701, James II., the exiled king of Great Britain, died at the court of Louis, who now, in violation of the treaty of Ryswick, recognized the son of James as the rightful sovereign of England. This action was regarded as an open insult to English nationality. King William led his armies to the field not less to thwart the ambition of France than to save his own crown and kingdom. But the English monarch did not live to carry out his plans. While yet the war was hardly begun, the king fell from his horse, was attacked with fever, and died in May of 1702. Parliament had already settled the crown on Anne, the sister-in-law of William and daughter of James II. The new sovereign adopted the

policy of her predecessor. From the circumstance of her reign, the conflict with France, which lasted for nearly thirteen years, is known in history as *QUEEN ANNE'S WAR*; but a better name is *The War of the Spanish Succession*.

In America the field of operations was limited to New England and South Carolina. The central colonies were scarcely aware that war existed. The military operations of both parties were conducted in a feeble and desultory manner. The more influential Indian tribes held aloof from the struggle. In August, 1701, the powerful Five Nations, whose dominions south of Lake Ontario and the river St. Lawrence formed a barrier between Canada and New York, made a treaty of neutrality with both the French and the English. The Abenakis of Maine did the same; but the French Jesuits prevailed with the latter to break their compact. The first notice of treachery which the English had, was a fearful massacre. In one day the whole country between the town of Wells and the Bay of Casco was given up to burning and butchery.

In midwinter of 1703-4 the town of Deerfield was destroyed. A war-party of three hundred French and Indians, setting out from Canada, marched on the snow-crust into the Connecticut valley. On the last night of February, the savages lay in the pine forest that surrounded the ill-fated village. Just before daybreak they rushed from their covert and fired the houses. Forty-seven of the inhabitants were tomahawked. A hundred and twelve were dragged into captivity. The prisoners, many of them women and children, were obliged to march to Canada. The snow lay four feet deep. The poor wretches, haggard with fear and starvation, sank down and died. The deadly hatchet hung ever above the heads of the feeble and the sick. Eunice Williams, the minister's wife, fainted by the wayside; in the presence of her husband and five captive children, her brains were dashed out with a tomahawk. Those who survived to the end of the journey were afterward ransomed and permitted to return to their desolated homes. A daughter of Mr. Williams remained with the savages, grew up among the Mohawks, married a chieftain, and in after years returned in Indian garb to Deerfield. No entreaties could induce her to remain with her friends. The solitude of the woods and the society of her tawny husband had prevailed over the charms of civilization.

In Maine and New Hampshire the war was marked with similar barbarities. Farms were devastated; towns were burned; the inhabitants were murdered or carried to Canada. Prowling bands of savages, led on by French officers, penetrated at times into the heart of Massachusetts. Against the treacherous barbarians and their bloodthirsty leaders there

was no security either at home or abroad. Along the desolated frontier ruin prevailed, as in the days of King Philip.

In 1707, the reduction of Port Royal was undertaken by Massachusetts. A fleet, bearing a thousand soldiers, was equipped and sent against the town. But Baron Castin, who commanded the French garrison, conducted the defence with so much skill that the English were obliged to abandon the undertaking. From this costly and disastrous expedition Massachusetts gained nothing but discouragement and debt. Nevertheless, after two years of preparation, the enterprise was renewed; and in 1710 an English and American fleet of thirty-six vessels, having on board four regiments of troops, anchored before Port Royal. The garrison was weak; Subercase, the French commander, had neither talents nor courage; famine came; and after a feeble defence of eleven days, the place surrendered at discretion. By this conquest all of Nova Scotia passed under the dominion of the English. The flag of Great Britain was hoisted over the conquered fortress, and the name of Port Royal gave place to ANNAPOLIS, in honor of Queen Anne.

Vast preparations were now made for the invasion of Canada. A land force under command of General Nicholson was to march against Montreal, while Quebec, the key to the French dominions in America, was to be reduced by an English fleet. For this purpose fifteen men-of-war and forty transports were placed under command of Sir Hovenden Walker. Seven regiments of veterans, selected from the armies of Europe, were added to the colonial forces and sent with the expedition. Before such an armament the defences of Quebec could hardly hold out an hour. But for the utter incompetency of the admiral, success would have been assured.

For six weeks in midsummer the great fleet lay idly in Boston Harbor. Sir Hovenden was getting ready to sail. The Abenaki Indians carried the news leisurely to Quebec; and every day added to the strength of the ramparts. At last, on the 30th of July, when no further excuse could be invented, the ships set sail for the St. Lawrence. At the Bay of Gaspé the admiral thought it necessary to loiter a while; then he busied himself with devising a plan to save his ships from the ice during the next winter. Proceeding slowly up the St. Lawrence, the fleet, on the 22d of August, was enveloped in a thick fog. The wind blew hard from the east. The commander was cautioned to remain on deck, but went quietly to bed. A messenger aroused him just in time to see eight of his best vessels dashed to pieces on the rocks. Eight hundred and eighty-four men went down in the foaming whirlpools. A council of war was held, and all voted that it was impossible to proceed. In a letter to

the English government, Walker expressed great gratitude that by the loss of a thousand men the rest had been saved *from freezing to death at Quebec*. The fleet sailed back to England, and the colonial troops were disbanded at Boston.

Meanwhile, the army of General Nicholson had marched against Montreal. But when news arrived of the failure of the fleet, the land expedition was also abandoned. The dallying cowardice of Walker had brought the campaign of 1711 to a shameful end. France had already made overtures for peace. Negotiations were formally begun in the early part of 1712; and on the 11th of April in the following year a treaty was concluded at Utrecht, a town of Holland. By the terms of the settlement, England obtained control of the fisheries of Newfoundland. Labrador, the Bay of Hudson and the whole of Acadia, or Nova Scotia, were ceded to Great Britain. On the 13th of July the chiefs of the hostile Indian tribes met the ambassadors of New England at Portsmouth, and a second treaty was concluded, by which peace was secured throughout the American colonies.

For thirty-one years after the close of Queen Anne's war, Massachusetts was free from hostile invasion. This was not, however, a period of public tranquillity. The people were dissatisfied with the royal government which King William had established, and were at constant variance with their governors. Phipps and his administration had been heartily disliked. Governor Shute was equally unpopular. Burnett, who succeeded him, and Belcher afterward, were only tolerated because they could not be shaken off. The opposition to the royal officers took the form of a controversy about their salaries. The general assembly insisted that the governor and his councilors should be paid in proportion to the importance of their several offices, and for actual service only. But the royal commissions gave to each officer a fixed salary, which was frequently out of all proportion to the services required. After many years of antagonism, the difficulty was finally adjusted with a compromise in which the advantage was wholly on the side of the people. It was agreed that the salaries of the governor and his assistants should be annually allowed, and the amount fixed by vote of the assembly. The representatives of popular liberty had once more triumphed over the principles of arbitrary rule.

On the death of Charles VI. of Austria, in 1740, there were two principal claimants to the crown of the empire—Maria Theresa, daughter of the late emperor, and Charles Albert of Bavaria. Each claimant had his party and his army; war followed; and nearly all the nations of Europe were swept into the conflict. As usually happened in

such struggles, England and France were arrayed against each other. The contest that ensued is generally known as the War of the Austrian Succession, but in American history is called **KING GEORGE'S WAR**; for George II. was now king of England.

In America the only important event of the war was the capture of Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island. This place had been fortified at vast expense by the French. Standing at the principal entrance to the gulf and river of St. Lawrence, the fortress was regarded as a key to the Canadian provinces. New England was quick to note that both Newfoundland and Nova Scotia were threatened so long as the French flag floated over Louisburg. Governor Shirley brought the matter before the legislature of Massachusetts, and it was resolved to attempt the capture of the enemy's stronghold.

The other colonies were invited to aid the enterprise. Connecticut responded by sending more than five hundred troops; New Hampshire and Rhode Island each furnished three hundred; a park of artillery was sent from New York; and Pennsylvania contributed a supply of provisions. The forces of Massachusetts alone numbered more than three thousand. It only remained to secure the co-operation of the English fleet then cruising in the West Indies. An earnest invitation was sent to Commodore Warren to join his armament with the colonial forces; but having no orders, he declined the request. Everything devolved on the army and navy of New England, but there was no quailing under the responsibility. William Pepperell, of Maine, was appointed commander-in-chief; and on the 4th of April, 1745, the fleet sailed for Cape Breton.

At Canseau, the eastern cape of Nova Scotia, the expedition was detained for sixteen days. The sea was thick with ice-drifts floating from the north. But the delay was fortunate, for in the mean time Commodore Warren had received instructions from England to proceed to Massachusetts and aid Governor Shirley in the contemplated reduction of Cape Breton. Sailing to the north, Warren brought his fleet safely to Canseau on the 23d of April. On the last day of the month the armament, now numbering a hundred vessels, entered the Bay of Gabarus in sight of Louisburg. A landing was effected four miles below the city. On the next day a company of four hundred volunteers, led by William Vaughan, marched across the peninsula and attacked a French battery which had been planted on the shore two miles beyond the town. The French, struck with terror at the impetuosity of the unexpected charge, spiked their guns and fled. Before morning the cannons were re-drilled and turned upon the fortress. An English battery was established on the east side of the harbor, but the sea-walls of Louisburg were so strong

that little damage was done by the guns across the bay. An attack in the rear of the town seemed impossible on account of a large swamp which lay in that direction; but the resolute soldiers of New England lashed their heavy guns upon sledges, and dragged them through the marsh to a tract of solid ground within two hundred yards of the enemy's bastions. Notwithstanding the advantage of this position, the walls of the fort stood firm, and the siege progressed slowly.

On the 18th of May a French ship of sixty-four guns, laden with stores for the garrison, was captured by Warren's fleet. The French were greatly discouraged by this event, and the defence grew feeble. The English were correspondingly elated with the prospect of success. On the 26th of the month an effort was made to capture the French battery in the harbor. A company of daring volunteers undertook the hazardous enterprise by night. Embarking in boats, they drew near the island where the battery was planted, but were discovered and repulsed with the loss of a hundred and seventy-six men. It was now determined to carry the town by storm. The assault was set for the 18th of June; but on the day previous the desponding garrison sent out a flag of truce; terms of capitulation were proposed and accepted, and the English flag rose above the conquered fortress.

By the terms of this surrender not only Louisburg, but the whole of Cape Breton, was given up to England. The rejoicing at Boston and



SIEGE OF LOUISBURG, 1745.

throughout the colonies was only equaled by the indignation and alarm of the French government. Louisburg must be retaken at all hazards, said the ministers of France. For this purpose a powerful fleet, under command of Duke d'Anville, was sent out in the following year. Before reaching America the duke died of a pestilence. His successor went mad and killed himself. Storms and shipwrecks and disasters drove the ill-

fated expedition to utter ruin. The renewal of the enterprise, in 1747, was attended with like misfortune. Commodores Warren and Anson overtook the French squadron and compelled a humiliating surrender.

In 1748, a treaty of peace was concluded at Aix-la-Chapelle, a town of Western Germany. After eight years of devastating warfare, nothing was gained but a mutual restoration of conquests. By the terms of settlement, Cape Breton was surrendered to France. With grief and

shame the fishermen and farmers of New England saw the island which had been subdued by their valor restored to their enemies. Of all the disputed boundary-lines between the French and English colonies in America, not a single one was settled by this treaty. The European nations had exhausted themselves with fighting; what cared they for the welfare of distant and feeble provinces? The real war between France and England for colonial supremacy in the West was yet to be fought. Within six years after the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, the two great powers were involved in the final and decisive conflict.

The history of Massachusetts has now been traced through a period of a hundred and thirty years. A few words on *THE CHARACTER OF THE PURITANS* may be appropriately added. They were in the beginning a vigorous and hardy people, firm-set in the principles of honesty and the practices of virtue. They were sober, industrious, frugal; resolute, zealous and steadfast. They esteemed honor above preferment, and truth more than riches. Loving home and native land, they left both for the sake of freedom; and finding freedom, they cherished it with the zeal and devotion of martyrs. Without influence, they became influential; without encouragement, great. Despised and mocked and hated, they rose above their revilers. In the school of evil fortune they gained the discipline of patience. Suffering without cause brought resignation without despair. Themselves the victims of persecution, they became the founders of a colony—a commonwealth—a nation. They were the children of adversity and the fathers of renown.

The gaze of the Puritan was turned ever to posterity. He believed in the future. His affections and hopes were with the coming ages. For his children he toiled and sacrificed; for them the energies of his life were cheerfully exhausted. The system of free schools is the enduring monument of his love and devotion. The printing-press is his memorial. Almshouses and asylums are the tokens of his care for the unfortunate. With him the outcast found sympathy, and the wanderer a home. He was the earliest champion of civil rights, and the builder of *THE UNION*.

The fathers of New England have been accused of bigotry. The charge is true: it is the background of the picture. In matters of religion they were intolerant and superstitious. Their religious faith was gloomy and foreboding. Human life was deemed a sad and miserable journey. To be mistaken was to sin. To fail in trifling ceremonies was reckoned a grievous crime. In the shadow of such belief the people became austere and melancholy. Escaping from the splendid formality of the Episcopal Church, they set up a colder and severer form of worship; and the form was made like iron. Dissenters themselves, they could not

tolerate the dissent of others. To restrain and punish error seemed right and necessary. Williams and Hutchinson were banished; the Quakers were persecuted and the witches hanged. But Puritanism contained within itself the power to correct its own abuses. Within the austere and gloomy fabric dwelt the very soul and genius of FREE THOUGHT. Under the ice-bound rigors of the faith flowed a current which no fatalism could congeal, no superstition poison. The heart of a mighty, tumultuous, liberty-loving life throbbed within the cold, stiff body of formalism. A powerful vitality, which no disaster could subdue, no persecution quench, warmed and energized and quickened. The tyranny of Phipps, the malice of Parris, and the bigotry of Mather are far outweighed by the sacrifices of Winthrop, the beneficence of Harvard, and the virtues of Sir Henry Vane. The evils of the system may well be forgotten in the glory of its achievements. Without the Puritans, America would have been a delusion and liberty only a name.

CHAPTER XVIII.

NEW YORK.—SETTLEMENT.

ILLUSTRIOUS Sir Henry Hudson! Indomitable explorer, dauntless cavalier of the ocean! Who so worthy to give a name to the great inland sea of the frozen North as he who gave his life in heroic combat with its terrors? Who so fit to become the father of a colony in the New World as he who braved its perils and revealed its mysteries? And where should the new State be planted unless by the broad haven—broadest and best on the American coast—and among the beautiful hills and landscapes

Where *The Hudson* came rolling through valleys a-smoke
From the lands of the Iroquois?

It was the good fortune of the American colonies to be founded by men whose lives, like the setting suns of summer, cast behind them a long and glorious twilight. But for the name and genius of Hudson the province of New Netherland had never been.

For ten years after the founding of New Amsterdam the colony was governed by directors. These officers were appointed and sent

out by the Dutch East India Company, in accordance with the charter of that corporation. The settlement on Manhattan Island was as yet only a village of traders. Not until 1623 was an actual colony sent from Holland to New Netherland. Two years previously, the Dutch West India Company had been organized, with the exclusive privilege of planting settlements in America. The charter of this company was granted for a period of twenty-four years, with the privilege of renewal; and the territory to be colonized extended from the Strait of Magellan to Hudson's Bay. Manhattan Island, with its cluster of



SIR HENRY HUDSON.

huts, passed at once under the control of the new corporation.

In April of 1623, the ship *New Netherland*, having on board a colony of thirty families, arrived at New Amsterdam. The colonists, called *WALLOONS*, were Dutch Protestant refugees from Flanders, in Belgium. They were of the same religious faith with the Huguenots of France, and came to America to find repose from the persecutions of their own country. Cornelius May was the leader of the company. The greater number of the new immigrants settled with their friends on Manhattan Island; but the captain, with a party of fifty, passing down the coast of New Jersey, entered and explored the Bay of Delaware. Sailing up the bay and river, the company landed on the eastern shore; here, at a point a few miles below Camden, where Timber Creek falls into the Delaware, a site was selected and a block-house built named *Fort Nassau*. The natives were won over by kindness; and when shortly after the fort was abandoned and the settlers returned to New Amsterdam, the Indians witnessed their departure with affectionate regret. In the same year Joris, another Dutch captain, ascended the Hudson to Castle Island,

where, nine years previously, Christianson had built the older Fort Nassau. A flood in the river had swept the island bare. Not deeming it prudent to restore the works in a place likely to be deluged, Joris sailed up stream a short distance and rebuilt the fortress on the present site of Albany. The name of this northern outpost was changed to Fort Orange; and here the eighteen families of Joris's company were permanently settled.

In 1624 civil government began in New Netherland. Cornelius May was first governor of the colony. His official duties, however, were only such as belonged to the superintendent of a trading-post. In the next year William Verhulst became director of the settlement. Herds of cattle, swine and sheep were brought over from Holland and distributed among the settlers. In January of 1626, Peter Minuit, of Wesel, was regularly appointed by the Dutch West India Company as governor of New Netherland. Until this time the natives had retained the ownership of Manhattan Island; but on Minuit's arrival, in May, an offer of purchase was made and accepted. The whole island, containing more than twenty thousand acres, was sold to the Dutch for twenty-four dollars. The southern point of land was selected as a site for fortifications; there a block-house was built and surrounded with a palisade. New Amsterdam was already a town of thirty houses. In the first year of Minuit's administration were begun the settlements of Wallabout and Brooklyn, on Long Island.

The Dutch of New Amsterdam and the Pilgrims of New Plymouth were early and fast friends. The Puritans themselves had but recently arrived from Holland, and could not forget the kind treatment which they had had in that country. They and the Walloons were alike exiles fleeing from persecution and tyranny. On two occasions, in 1627, a Dutch embassy was sent to Plymouth with an expression of good will. The English were cordially invited to remove without molestation to the more fertile valley of the Connecticut. Governor Bradford replied with words of cheer and sympathy. The Dutch were honestly advised of the claims of England to the country of the Hudson; and the people of New Netherland were cautioned to make good their titles by accepting new deeds from the council of Plymouth. A touch of jealousy was manifested when the Dutch were warned not to send their trading-boats into the Bay of Narragansett.

In 1628 the population of Manhattan numbered two hundred and seventy. The settlers devoted their whole energies to the fur-trade. Every bay, inlet and river between Rhode Island and the Delaware was visited by their vessels. The colony gave promise of rapid development

and of great profit to the proprietors. If the houses were rude and thatched with straw, there were energy and thrift within. If only wooden chimneys carried up the smoke, the fires of the hearthstones were kindled with laughter and song. If creaking windmills flung abroad their ungainly arms in the winds of Long Island Sound, it was proof that the people had families to feed and meant to feed them.

The West India Company now came forward with a new and peculiar scheme of colonization. In 1629, the corporation created a **CHARTER OF PRIVILEGES**, under which a class of proprietors called patroons were authorized to possess and colonize the country. Each patroon might select anywhere in New Netherland a tract of land not more than sixteen miles in length, and of a breadth to be determined by the location. On the banks of a navigable river not more than eight miles might be appropriated by one proprietor. Each district was to be held in fee simple by the patroon, who was empowered to exercise over his estate and its inhabitants the same authority as did the hereditary lords of Europe. The conditions were that the estates should be held as dependencies of Holland; that each patroon should purchase his domain of the Indians; and that he should, within four years from the date of his title, establish on his manor a colony of not less than fifty persons. Education and religion were commended in the charter, but no provision was made for the support of either.

Under the provisions of this instrument five estates were immediately established. Three of them, lying contiguous, embraced a district of twenty-four miles in the valley of the Hudson above and below Fort Orange. The fourth manor was laid out by Michael Pauw on Staten Island; and the fifth, and most important, included the southern half of the present State of Delaware. To this estate a colony was sent out from Holland in the spring of 1631. Samuel Godyn was patroon of the domain, but the immediate management was entrusted to David Peterson de Vries. With a company of thirty immigrants, he reached the entrance to Delaware Bay, and anchored within Cape Henlopen. Landing five miles up the bay, at the mouth of Lewis Creek, the colony selected a site and laid the foundations of Lewistown, the oldest settlement in Delaware.

After a year of successful management, De Vries returned to Holland, leaving the settlement in charge of Gillis Hosset. The latter, a man of no sagacity, soon brought the colony to ruin. An Indian chief who offended him was seized and put to death. The natives, who thus far had treated the strangers with deference and good faith, were aroused to vengeance. Rising suddenly out of an ambuscade upon the terrified colonists, they left not a man alive. The houses and palisades were

burned to the ground; nothing but bones and ashes remained to testify of savage passion. When De Vries returned, in December of 1632, he found only the blackened ruins of his flourishing hamlet. He sailed first to Virginia for a cargo of supplies, and thence to New Amsterdam; but before the colony could be re-established, Lord Baltimore had received from the English government a patent which embraced the whole of Delaware; the weaker, though older, claim of the Dutch patroon gave way before the charter of his more powerful rival.

In April of 1633, Minuit was superseded in the government of New Netherland by Wouter van Twiller. Three months previously the Dutch had purchased of the natives the soil around Hartford, and had erected a block-house within the present limits of the city. This was the first fortress built on the Connecticut River; but the Puritans, though professing friendship, were not going to give up the valley without a struggle. In October of the same year an armed vessel, sent out from Plymouth, sailed up the river and openly defied the Dutch commander at Hartford. Passing the fortress, the English proceeded up stream to the mouth of the river Farmington, where they landed and built Fort Windsor. Two years later, by the building of Saybrook, at the mouth of the Connecticut, the English obtained command of the river both above and below the Dutch fort. The block-house at Hartford, being thus cut off, was comparatively useless to the authorities of New Netherland; English towns multiplied in the neighborhood; and the Dutch finally surrendered their eastern outpost to their more powerful rivals.

Four of the leading European nations had now established permanent colonies in America. The fifth to plant an American State was Sweden. As early as 1626, Gustavus Adolphus, the Protestant king of that country and the hero of his age, had formed the design of establishing settlements in the West. For this purpose a company of merchants had been organized, to whose capital the king himself contributed four hundred thousand dollars. The objects had in view were to form a refuge for persecuted Protestants and to extend Swedish commerce. But before his plans of colonization could be carried into effect, Gustavus became involved in the Thirty Years' War, then raging in Germany. The company was disorganized, and the capital wasted in the purchase of military stores. In November of 1632 the Swedish king was killed at the battle of Lützen. For a while it seemed that the plan of colonizing America had ended in failure, but Oxenstiern, the great Swedish minister, took up the work which his master had left unfinished. The charter of the company was renewed, and after four years of preparation the enterprise was brought to a successful issue.



DEVRIES REVISITS HIS RUINED SETTLEMENT.



In the mean time, Peter Minuit, the recent governor of New Netherland, had left the service of Holland and entered that of Sweden. To him was entrusted the management of the first Swedish colony which was sent to America. Late in the year 1637, a company of Swedes and Finns left the harbor of Stockholm, and in the following February arrived in Delaware Bay. Never before had the Northerners beheld so beautiful a land. They called Cape Henlopen the Point of Paradise. The whole country, sweeping around the west side of the bay and up the river to the falls at Trenton, was honorably purchased of the Indians. In memory of native land, the name of NEW SWEDEN was given to this fine territory. The colony landed just below the mouth of the Brandywine, in the northern part of the present State of Delaware. On the left bank of a small tributary, at a point about six miles from the bay, a spot was chosen for the settlement. Here the foundations of a fort were laid, and the immigrants soon provided themselves with houses. The creek and the fort were both named in honor of Christiana, the maiden queen of Sweden.

The colony prospered greatly. By each returning ship letters were borne to Stockholm, describing the loveliness of the country. Immigration became rapid and constant. At one time, in 1640, more than a hundred families, unable to find room on the crowded vessels which were leaving the Swedish capital, were turned back to their homes. The banks of Delaware Bay and River were dotted with pleasant hamlets. On every hand appeared the proofs of well-directed industry. Of all the early settlers in America, none were more cheerful, intelligent and virtuous than the Swedes.

From the first, the authorities of New Amsterdam were jealous of the colony on the Delaware. Sir William Kieft, who had succeeded the incompetent Van Twiller in the governorship, sent an earnest remonstrance to Christiana, warning the settlers of their intrusion on Dutch territory. But the Swedes, giving little heed to the complaints of their neighbors, went on enlarging their borders and strengthening their outposts. Governor Kieft was alarmed and indignant at these aggressions, and as a precautionary measure sent a party to rebuild Fort Nassau, on the old site below Camden. The Swedes, regarding this fortress as a menace to their colony, adopted active measures of defence. Ascending the river to within six miles of the mouth of the Schuylkill, they landed on the island of Tinicum, and built an impregnable fort of hemlock logs. Here, in 1643, Governor Printz established his residence. To Pennsylvania, as well as to Delaware, Sweden contributed the earliest colony.

In 1640, New Netherland became involved in a war with the Indians of Long Island and New Jersey. The natives of the lower Hudson were a weak and unwarlike people; under just treatment they would have faithfully kept the peace. But dishonest traders had madened them with rum and then defrauded and abused them. Burning with resentment and hate, the savages of the Jersey shore crossed over to Staten Island, laid waste the farms and butchered the inhabitants. New Amsterdam was for a while endangered, but was soon put in a state of defence. A company of militia was organized and sent against the Delawares of New Jersey, but nothing resulted from the expedition. A large bounty was offered for every member of the tribe of the Raritans, and many were hunted to death. On both sides the war degenerated into treachery and murder. Through the mediation of Roger Williams, the great peacemaker of Rhode Island, a truce was obtained, and immediately broken. A chieftain's son, who had been made drunk and robbed, went to the nearest settlement and killed the first Hollander whom he met. Governor Kieft demanded the criminal, but the sachems refused to give him up. They offered to pay a heavy fine for the wrong done, but Kieft would accept nothing less than the life of the murderer.

While the dispute was still unsettled, a party of the terrible Mohawks came down the river to claim and enforce their supremacy over the natives of the coast. The timid Algonquins in the neighborhood of New Amsterdam cowered before the mighty warriors of the North, huddled together on the bank of the Hudson, and begged assistance of the Dutch. Here the vindictive Kieft saw an opportunity of wholesale destruction. A company of soldiers set out secretly from Manhattan, crossed the river and discovered the lair of the Indians. The place was surrounded by night, and the first notice of danger given to the savages was the roar of muskets. Nearly a hundred of the poor wretches were killed before daydawn. Women who shrieked for pity were mangled to death, and children were thrown into the river.

When it was known among the tribes that the Dutch, and not the Mohawks, were the authors of this outrage, the war was renewed with fury. The Indians were in a frenzy. Dividing into small war-parties, they concealed themselves in the woods and swamps; then rose, without a moment's warning, upon defenceless farmhouses, burning and butchering without mercy. At this time that noted woman Mrs. Anne Hutchinson was living with her son-in-law in the valley of the Housatonic. Her house was surrounded and set on fire by the savages; every member of the family except one child was cruelly murdered. Mrs. Hutchinson herself was burned alive.

In 1643, Captain John Underhill, a fugitive from Massachusetts, was appointed to the command of the Dutch forces. At the head of a regiment raised by Governor Kieft he invaded New Jersey, and brought the Delawares into subjection. A decisive battle was fought on Long Island; and at Greenwich, in Western Connecticut, the power of the Indians was finally broken. Again the ambassadors of the Iroquois came forward with proposals for peace. Both parties were anxious to rest from the ruin and devastation of war. On the 30th of August, 1645, a treaty was concluded at Fort Amsterdam.

Nearly all of the bloodshed and sorrow of these five years of war may be charged to Governor Kieft. He was a revengeful and cruel man, whose idea of government was to destroy whatever opposed him. The people had many times desired to make peace with the Indians, but the project had always been defeated by the headstrong passions of the governor. A popular party, headed by the able De Vries, at last grew powerful enough to defy his authority. As soon as the war was ended, petitions for his removal were circulated and signed by the people. Two years after the treaty, the Dutch West India Company revoked his commission and appointed Peter Stuyvesant to succeed him. In 1647, Kieft embarked for Europe; but the heavy-laden merchantman in which he sailed was dashed to pieces by a storm on the coast of Wales, and the guilty governor of New Netherland found a grave in the sea.

CHAPTER XIX.

NEW YORK.—ADMINISTRATION OF STUYVESANT.

THE honest and soldierly PETER STUYVESANT was the last and greatest of the governors of New Netherland. He entered upon his duties on the 11th of May, 1647, and continued in office for more than seventeen years. His first care was to conciliate the Indians. By the wisdom and liberality of his government the wayward red men were reclaimed from hostility and hatred. So intimate and cordial became the relations between the natives and the Dutch that they were suspected of making common cause against the English; even Massachusetts was alarmed lest such an alliance should be formed. But the policy of Governor Stuyvesant was based on nobler principles.

Until now the West India Company had had exclusive control of

the commerce of New Netherland. In the first year of the new administration this monopoly was abolished, and regular export duties were substituted. The benefit of the change was at once apparent in the improvement of the Dutch province. In one of the letters written to Stuyvesant by the secretary of the company, the remarkable prediction is made that the commerce of New Amsterdam should cover every ocean and the ships of all nations crowd into her harbor. But for many years the growth of the city was slow. As late as the middle of the century, the better parts of Manhattan Island were still divided among the farmers. Central Park was a forest of oaks and chestnuts.

In 1650, a boundary-line was fixed between New England and New Netherland. The Dutch were fearful lest the English should reach the Hudson and cut off the fur-trade between Fort Orange and New Amsterdam. Governor Stuyvesant met the ambassadors of the Eastern colonies at Hartford, and after much discussion an eastern limit was set to the Dutch possessions. The line there established extended across Long Island north and south, passing through Oyster Bay, and thence to Greenwich, on the other side of the sound. From this point northward the dividing-line was nearly identical with the present boundary of Connecticut on the west. This treaty was ratified by the colonies, by the West India Company and by the states-general of Holland; but the English government treated the matter with indifference and contempt.

Stuyvesant had less to fear from the colony of New Sweden. The people of New Netherland outnumbered the Swedes as ten to one, and the Dutch claim to the country of the Delaware had never been renounced. In 1651, an armament left New Amsterdam, entered the bay and came to anchor at a point on the western shore five miles below the mouth of the Brandywine. On the present site of New Castle, Fort Casimir was built and garrisoned with Dutch soldiers. This act was equivalent to a declaration of war. The Swedish settlement of Christiana was almost in sight of the hostile fortress, and a conflict could hardly be avoided. Rising, the governor of the Swedes, looked on quietly until Fort Casimir was completed, then captured the place by stratagem, overpowered the garrison and hoisted the flag of Sweden.

It was a short-lived triumph. The West India Company were secretly pleased that the Swedes had committed an act of open violence. Orders were at once issued to Stuyvesant to visit the Swedish colonists with vengeance, and to compel their submission or drive them from the Delaware. In September of 1655 the orders of the company were carried out to the letter. The old governor put himself at the head of more than six hundred troops—a number almost equal to the entire population

of New Sweden, and sailed to Delaware Bay. Resistance was hopeless. The Dutch forces were landed at New Castle, and the Swedes gave way. Before the 25th of the month every fort belonging to the colony had been forced to capitulate. Governor Rising was captured, but was treated with great respect. Honorable terms were granted to all, and in a few days the authority of New Netherland was established throughout the country. Except a few turbulent spirits who removed to Maryland and Virginia, submission was universal. After an existence of less than eighteen years, the little State of New Sweden had ceased to be. The American possessions and territorial claims of France, England, Holland, Sweden and Spain will be best understood from the accompanying map, drawn for the year 1655.

How hardly can the nature of savages be restrained! While Governor Stuyvesant was absent on his expedition against the Swedes, the Algonquin tribes rose in rebellion. The poor creatures were going to take New Amsterdam. In a fleet of sixty-four canoes they appeared before the town, yelling and discharging arrows. What could their puny missiles do against the walls of a European fortress? After paddling about until their rage, but not their hate, was spent, the savages went on shore and began their old work of burning and murder. The return of the Dutch forces from the Delaware induced the sachems to sue for peace, which Stuyvesant granted on better terms than the Indians had deserved. The captives were ransomed, and the treacherous tribes were allowed to go with trifling punishments.

For eight years after the conquest of New Sweden the peace of New Netherland was unbroken. In 1663 the natives of the county of Ulster, on the Hudson, broke out in war. The town of Esopus, now Kingston, was attacked and destroyed. Sixty-five of the inhabitants were either tomahawked or carried into captivity. To punish this outrage a strong force was sent from New Amsterdam. The Indians fled, hoping to find refuge in the woods; but the Dutch soldiers pursued them to their villages, burned their wigwams and killed every warrior who could be overtaken. As winter came on, the humbled tribe began to beg for mercy. In December a truce was granted; and in May of the following year a treaty of peace was concluded.

Governor Stuyvesant had great difficulty in defending his province beyond the Delaware. The queen of Sweden and her ministers at Stockholm still looked fondly to their little American colony, and cherished the hope of recovering the conquered territory. A more dangerous competitor was found in Lord Baltimore, of Maryland, whose patent, given under the great seal of England, covered all the territory between the

Chesapeake and Delaware Bay, as far north as the latitude of Philadelphia. Berkeley, of Virginia, also claimed New Sweden as a part of his dominions. Connecticut pushed her settlements westward on Long Island, and purchased all the remaining Indian claims between her western frontier and the Hudson. Massachusetts boldly declared her intention to extend her boundaries to Fort Orange. The indignant Stuyvesant asked the agents of Connecticut where the province of New Netherland could shortly be found; and the agents coolly answered *that they did not know*.

Discord at home added to the governor's embarrassments. For many years the Dutch had witnessed the growth and prosperity of the English colonies. Boston had outgrown New Amsterdam. The schools of Massachusetts and Connecticut flourished; the academy on Manhattan, after a sickly career of two years, was discontinued. In New Netherland heavy taxes were levied for the support of the poor; New England had no poor. Liberty and right were the subjects of debate in every English village; to the Dutch farmers and traders such words had little meaning. The people of New Netherland grew emulous of the progress of their powerful neighbors, and attributed their own abasement to the mismanagement and selfish greed of the West India Company. Without actual disloyalty to Holland, the Dutch came to prefer the laws and customs of England. Under these accumulating troubles the faithful Stuyvesant was wellnigh overwhelmed.

Such was the condition of affairs at the beginning of 1664. England and Holland were at peace. Neither nation had reason to apprehend an act of violence from the other. In all that followed, the arbitrary principles and unscrupulous disposition of the English king were fully manifested. On the 12th of March in this year the duke of York received at the hands of his brother, Charles II., two extensive patents for American territory. The first grant included the district reaching from the Kennebec to the St. Croix River, and the second embraced the whole country between the Connecticut and the Delaware. Without regard to the rights of Holland, in utter contempt of the West India Company, through whose exertions the valley of the Hudson had been peopled, with no respect for the wishes of the Dutch, or even for the voice of his own Parliament, the English monarch in one rash hour despoiled a sister kingdom of a well-earned province.

The duke of York made haste to secure his territory. No time must be left for the states-general to protest against the outrage. An English squadron was immediately equipped, put under command of Richard Nicolls and sent to America. In July the armament reached



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000

Boston, and thence proceeded against New Amsterdam. On the 28th of August, the fleet passed the Narrows, and anchored at Gravesend Bay. The English camp was pitched at Brooklyn Ferry; and before the Dutch had recovered from their surprise, the whole of Long Island was subdued. An embassy came over from New Amsterdam. Governor Stuyvesant, ever true to his employers, demanded to know the meaning of all this hostile array. To receive the surrender of New Netherland was the quiet answer of Nicolls. There must be an immediate acknowledgment of the sovereignty of England. Those who submitted should have the rights of Englishmen; those who refused should hear the crash of cannon-balls. The Dutch council of New Amsterdam was immediately convened. It was clear that the burgomasters meant to surrender. The stormy old governor exhorted



PETER STUYVESANT.

them to rouse to action and fight; some one replied that the Dutch West India Company was not worth fighting for. Burning with indignation, Stuyvesant snatched up the written proposal of Nicolls and tore it to tatters in the presence of his council. It was all in vain. The brave old man was forced to sign the capitulation; and on the 8th of September, 1664, New Netherland ceased to exist. The English flag was hoisted over the fort and town, and the name of NEW YORK was substituted for New Amsterdam. The surrender of Fort Orange, now named Albany, followed on the 24th; and on the 1st of October the Swedish and Dutch settlements on the Delaware capitulated. The conquest was complete. The supremacy of Great Britain in America was finally established. From the north-east corner of Maine to the southern limits of Georgia, every mile of the American coast was under the flag of England.

CHAPTER XX.

NEW YORK UNDER THE ENGLISH.

RICHARD NICOLLS, the first English governor of New York, began his duties by settling the boundaries of his province. It was a work full of trouble and vexation. As early as 1623 the whole of Long Island had been granted to the earl of Stirling. Connecticut also claimed and occupied all that part of the island included in the present county of Suffolk. Against both of these claimants the patent of the duke of York was now to be enforced by his deputy Nicolls. The claim of Stirling was fairly purchased by the governor, but the pretensions of Connecticut were arbitrarily set aside. This action was the source of so much discontent that the duke was constrained to compensate Connecticut by making a favorable change in her south-west boundary-line.

Two months before the conquest of New Netherland by the English, the irregular territory between the Hudson and the Delaware, as far north as a point on the latter river in the latitude of forty-one degrees and forty minutes, was granted to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This district, corresponding, except on the northern boundary, with the present State of New Jersey, was now wrested from the jurisdiction of New York, and a separate government established by the proprietors. The country below the Delaware, until recently called New Sweden, but now named THE TERRITORIES, was consolidated with New York and ruled by deputies appointed by the governors of that province. Finally, the new name conferred by Nicolls on his capital was extended to all the country formerly called New Netherland.

At the first the people were deluded with many promises of civil liberty. To secure this, the Dutch, against the passionate appeals of the patriotic Stuyvesant, had voluntarily surrendered themselves to the English government. But it was a poor sort of civil liberty that any province was likely to obtain from one of the Stuart kings of England. The promised right of representation in a general assembly of the people was evaded and withheld. To this was added a greater grief in the annulling of the old titles by which, for half a century, the Dutch farmers had held their lands. The people were obliged to accept new deeds at the hands

of the English governor, and to pay him therefor such sums as yielded an immense revenue. The evil done to the province, however, was less than might have been expected from so arbitrary and despotic a government.

In 1667, Nicolls was superseded by Lovelace. With less ability and generosity than his predecessor, he proved a greater tyrant. The bad principles of the system established by the duke of York were now fully developed. The people became dissatisfied and gloomy. Protests against the government and petitions for redress were constantly presented, and constantly rejected with contempt. The discontent was universal. The towns of Southold, Southampton and Easthampton resisted the tax-gatherers. The people of Huntington voted that they were robbed of the privileges of Englishmen. The villagers of Jamaica, Flushing and Hempstead passed a resolution that the governor's decree of taxation was contrary to the laws of the English nation. The only attention which Lovelace and his council paid to these resolutions was to declare them scandalous, illegal and seditious, and to order them to be publicly burnt before the town-house of New York. When the Swedes, naturally a quiet and submissive people, resisted the exactions of the government, they were visited with additional severity. "If there is any more murmuring against the taxes, make them so heavy that the people can do nothing but think how to pay them," said Lovelace in his instructions to his deputy.

The Dutch and the English colonists were always friends. Not once in the whole history of the country did they lift the sword against each other. Even while England and Holland were at war, as they were in 1652-54, the American subjects of the two nations remained at peace. Another war followed that act of violence by which, in 1664, the duke of York possessed himself of New Netherland; but the conflict did not extend to America. A third time, in 1672, Charles II. was induced by the king of France to begin a contest with the Dutch government. This time, indeed, the struggle extended to the colonies, and New York was revolutionized, but not by the action of her own people. In 1673 a small squadron was fitted out by Holland and placed under command of the gallant Captain Evertsen. The fleet sailed for America, and arrived before Manhattan on the 30th of July. The governor of New York was absent, and Manning, the deputy-governor, was a coward. The defences of the city were dilapidated, and the people refused to strengthen them. Within four hours after the arrival of the squadron the fort was surrendered. The city capitulated, and the whole province yielded without a struggle. New Jersey and Delaware sent in their submission; the name of New Netherland was revived; and the authority of Holland was restored from Connecticut to Maryland.

The reconquest of New York by the Dutch was only a brief military occupation of the country. The civil authority of Holland was never reëstablished. In 1674, Charles II. was obliged by his Parliament to conclude a treaty of peace. There was the usual clause requiring the restoration of all conquests made during the war. New York reverted to the English government, and the rights of the duke were again recognized in the province. To make his authority doubly secure for the future, he obtained from his brother, the king, a new patent confirming the provisions of the former charter. The man who now received the appointment of deputy-governor of New York was none other than Sir Edmund Andros. On the last day of October the Dutch forces were finally withdrawn, and Andros assumed the government.

It was a sad sort of government for the people. The worst practices of Lovelace's administration were revived. The principles of arbitrary rule were openly avowed. Taxes were levied without authority of law, and the appeals and protests of the people were treated with derision. The clamor for a popular legislative assembly had become so great that Andros was on the point of yielding. He even wrote a letter to the duke of York advising that thick-headed prince to grant the people the right of electing a colonial legislature. The duke replied that popular assemblies were seditious and dangerous; that they only fostered discontent and disturbed the peace of the government; and finally, that *he did not see any use for them*. To the people of New York the civil liberty of the New England colonies seemed farther off than ever.

By the terms of his grant the duke of York claimed jurisdiction over all the territory between the Connecticut River and Maryland. To assert and maintain this claim of his master was a part of the deputy-governor's business in America. The first effort to extend the duke's territorial rights to the limits of his charter was made in July of 1675. With some armed sloops and a company of soldiers, Andros proceeded to the mouth of the Connecticut in the hope of establishing his jurisdiction. The general assembly of the colony had heard of his coming, and had sent word to Captain Bull, who commanded the fort at Saybrook, to resist Andros in the name of the king. When the latter came in sight and hoisted the flag of England, the same colors were raised within the fortress. The royal governor was permitted to land; but when he began to read his commission, he was ordered in the king's name to desist. Overawed by the threatening looks of the Saybrook militia, Andros retired to his boats and set sail for Long Island.

Notwithstanding the grant of New Jersey to Carteret and Berkeley, the attempt was now made to extend the jurisdiction of New York over

the lower province. Andros issued a decree that ships sailing to and from the ports of New Jersey should pay a duty at the custom-house of New York. This tyrannical action was openly resisted. Andros attempted to frighten the assembly of New Jersey into submission, and proceeded so far as to arrest Philip Carteret, the deputy-governor. But it was all of no use. The representatives of the people declared themselves to be under the protection of the Great Charter, which not even the duke of York, or his brother the king, could alter or annul. In August of 1682 the territories beyond the Delaware were granted by the duke to William Penn. This little district, first settled by the Swedes, afterward conquered by the Dutch, then transferred to England on the conquest of New Netherland, was now finally separated from the jurisdiction of New York and joined to Pennsylvania. The governors of the latter province continued to exercise authority over the three counties on the Delaware until the American Revolution.

At the close of Andros's administration, in 1683, Thomas Dongan, a Catholic, became governor of New York. For thirty years the people had been clamoring for a general assembly. Just before Andros left the province, the demand became more vehement than ever. The retiring governor, himself of a despotic disposition, counseled the duke to concede the right of representation to the people. At last James yielded, not so much with the view of extending popular rights, as with the hope of increasing his revenues from the improved condition of his province. Dongan, the new governor, came with full instructions to call an assembly of all the freeholders of New York, by whom certain persons of their own number should be elected to take part in the government. Seventy years had passed since the settlement of Manhattan Island; and now for the first time the people were permitted to choose their own rulers and to frame their own laws.

The first act of the new assembly was to declare that the supreme legislative power of the province resided in the governor, the council and **THE PEOPLE**. All freeholders were granted the right of suffrage; trial by jury was established; taxes should no more be levied except by consent of the assembly; soldiers should not be quartered on the people; martial law should not exist; no person accepting the general doctrines of religion should be in any wise distressed or persecuted. All the rights and privileges of Massachusetts and Virginia were carefully written by the zealous law-makers of New York in their first charter of liberties.

In July of 1684 an important treaty was concluded at Albany. The governors of New York and Virginia were met in convention by the sachems of the Iroquois, and the terms of a lasting peace were settled.

A long war ensued between the Five Nations and the French. The Jesuits of Canada employed every artifice and intrigue to induce the Indians to break their treaty with the English, but all to no purpose; the alliance was faithfully observed. In 1684, and again in 1687, the French invaded the territory of the Iroquois; but the mighty Mohawks and Oneidas drove back their foes with loss and disaster. By the barrier of the friendly Five Nations on the north, the English and Dutch colonies were screened from danger.

In 1685 the duke of York became king of England. It was soon found that even the monarch of a great nation could violate his pledges. King James became the open antagonist of the government which had been established under his own directions. The popular legislature of New York was abrogated. An odious tax was levied by an arbitrary decree. Printing-presses were forbidden in the province. All the old abuses were revived and made a public boast.

In December of 1686, Edmund Andros became governor of all New England. It was a part of his plan to extend his dominion over New York and New Jersey. To the former province, Francis Nicholson, the lieutenant-general of Andros, was sent as deputy. Dongan was superseded, and until the English Revolution of 1688, New York was ruled as a dependency of New England. When the news of that event and of the accession of William of Orange reached the province, there was a general tumult of rejoicing. The people rose in rebellion against the government of Nicholson, who was glad enough to escape from New York and return to England.

The leader of the insurrection was Jacob Leisler, a captain of the militia. A committee of ten took upon themselves the task of reorganizing the government. Leisler was commissioned to take possession of the fort of New York. Most of the troops in the city, together with five hundred volunteers, proceeded against the fort, which was surrendered without a struggle. The insurgents published a declaration in which they avowed their loyalty to the prince of Orange, their countryman, and expressed their determination to yield immediate obedience to his authority. A provisional government was organized, with Leisler at the head. The provincial councilors, who were friends and adherents of the deposed Nicholson, left the city and repaired to Albany. Here the party who were opposed to the usurpation of Leisler proceeded to organize a second provisional government. Both factions were careful to exercise authority in the name of William and Mary, the new sovereigns of England.

In September of 1689, Milborne, the son-in-law of Leisler, was sent to Albany to demand the surrender of the town and fort. Court-

land and Bayard, who were the leaders of the northern faction, opposed the demand with so much vigor that Milborne was obliged to retire without accomplishing his object. Such was the condition of affairs at the beginning of King William's War. How the village of Schenectady was destroyed by the French and Indians, and how an unsuccessful expedition by land and water was planned against Quebec and Montreal, has been narrated in the history of Massachusetts. Such was the dispiriting effect of these disasters upon the people of Albany and the north that a second effort made by Milborne against the government of the opposing faction was successful; and in the spring of 1690 the authority of Leisler as temporary governor of New York was recognized throughout the province. The summer was spent in fruitless preparations to invade and conquer Canada. The general assembly was convened at the capital; but little was accomplished except a formal recognition of the insurrectionary government of Leisler.

In January of 1691, Richard Ingoldsby arrived at New York. He bore a commission as captain, and brought the intelligence that Colonel Sloughter had been appointed royal governor of the province. Leisler received Ingoldsby with courtesy, and offered him quarters in the city; but the latter, without authority from either the king or the governor, haughtily demanded the surrender of His Majesty's fort. Leisler refused to yield, but expressed his willingness to submit to any one who bore a commission from King William or Colonel Sloughter. On the 19th of March the governor himself arrived; and Leisler on the same day despatched messengers, tendering his service and submission. The messengers were arrested, and Ingoldsby, the enemy and rival of Leisler, was sent with verbal orders for the surrender of the fort. Leisler foresaw his doom, and hesitated. He wrote a letter to Sloughter, expressing a desire to make a personal surrender of the post to the governor. The letter was unanswered; Ingoldsby pressed his demand; Leisler wavered, capitulated, and with Milborne was seized and hurried to prison.

As soon as the royal government was organized the two prisoners were brought to trial. The charge was rebellion and treason. Dudley, the chief-justice of New England, rendered a decision that Leisler had been a usurper. The prisoners refused to plead, were convicted and sentenced to death. Sloughter, however, determined to know the pleasure of the king before putting the sentence into execution. But the royalist assembly of New York had already come together, and the members were resolved that the prisoners should be hurried to their death. The governor was invited to a banquet; and when heated with strong drink, the death-warrant was thrust before him for his signature. He succeeded in affix-

ing his name to the fatal parchment; and almost before the fumes of his drunken revel had passed away, his victims had met their fate. On the 16th of May, Leisler and Milborne were brought from prison, led through a drenching rain to the scaffold and hanged. Within less than a year afterward, their estates, which had been confiscated, were restored to their heirs; and in 1695 the attainder of the families was removed.

The same summer that witnessed the execution of Leisler and Milborne was noted for the renewal of the treaty with the Iroquois. At Albany, Governor Sloughter met the sachems of the Five Nations, and the former terms of fidelity and friendship were reaffirmed. In the following year the valiant Major Schuyler, at the head of the New York militia, joined a war-party of the Iroquois in a successful expedition against the French settlements beyond Lake Champlain. Meanwhile, the assembly of the province had been in session at the capital. Although the representatives were royalists, a resolution was passed against arbitrary taxation, and another which declared the people to be a part of the governing power of the colony. It was not long until one of the governors had occasion to say that the people of New York were growing altogether too big with the privileges of Englishmen.

Soon after his return from Albany, Sloughter's career was cut short by death. He was succeeded in the office of governor by Benjamin Fletcher, a man of bad passions and poor abilities. The new executive arrived in September of 1692. One of the first measures of his administration was to renew the recent treaty with the Iroquois. It was at this time the avowed purpose of the English monarch to place under a common government all the territory between the Connecticut River and Delaware Bay. To further this project, Fletcher was armed with an ample and comprehensive commission. He was made governor of New York, and commander-in-chief not only of the troops of his own province, but also of the militia of Connecticut and New Jersey. In the latter province he met with little opposition; but the Puritans of Hartford resisted so stubbornly that the alarmed and disgusted governor was glad to return to his own capital.

The next effort of the administration was to establish the Episcopal Church in New York. The Dutch and the English colonists of the province were still distinct in nationality; the former, though Calvinists, were not unfriendly to the Episcopal service which the Puritans so heartily despised. In a religious controversy between Fletcher's council and the English, the Dutch, not being partisans of either, looked on with comparative indifference. But when the governor was on the point of succeeding with his measures, the general assembly interposed, passed a

decree of toleration, and brought the pretentious Church to a level with the rest. Fletcher gave vent to his indignation by calling his legislators a set of unmannerly and insubordinate boors.

In 1696 the territory of New York was invaded by the French under Frontenac, governor of Canada. The faithful Iroquois made common cause with the colonial forces, and the formidable expedition of the French was turned into confusion. Before the loss could be repaired and a second invasion undertaken, King William's War was ended by the treaty of Ryswick. In the following year, the earl of Bellomont, an Irish nobleman of excellent character and popular sympathies, succeeded Fletcher in the government of New York. His administration of less than four years was the happiest era in the history of the colony. His authority, like that of his predecessor, extended over a part of New England. Massachusetts and New Hampshire were under his jurisdiction, but Connecticut and Rhode Island remained independent. To this period belong the exploits of the famous pirate, Captain William Kidd.

For centuries piracy had been the common vice of the high seas. The nations were just now beginning to take active measures for the suppression of the atrocious crime. The honest and humane Bellomont was one who was anxious to see the end of piratical violence. His commission contained a clause which authorized the arming of a vessel to range the ocean in pursuit of pirates. The ship was to bear the English flag, and was also commissioned as a privateer to prey upon the commerce of the enemies of England. The vessel was owned by a company of distinguished and honorable persons; Governor Bellomont himself was one of the proprietors; and William Kidd received from the English admiralty a commission as captain. The ship sailed from England before Bellomont's departure for New York. Hardly had the earl reached his province when the news came that Kidd himself had turned pirate and become the terror of the seas. For two years he continued his infamous career, then appeared publicly in the streets of Boston, was seized, sent to England, tried, convicted and hanged. What disposition was made of the enormous treasures which the pirate-ship had gathered on the ocean has never been ascertained. It has been thought that the vast hoard of ill-gotten wealth was buried in the sands of Long Island. Governor Bellomont was charged with having shared the booty, but an investigation before the House of Commons showed the accusation to be groundless.

In striking contrast with the virtues and wisdom of Bellomont were the vices and folly of Lord Cornbury, who succeeded him. He arrived at New York in the beginning of May, 1702. A month

previously the proprietors of New Jersey had surrendered their rights in the province to the English Crown. All obstacles being thus removed, the two colonies were formally united in one government under the authority of Cornbury. For a period of thirty-six years the territories, though with separate assemblies, continued under the jurisdiction of a single executive.

One of Cornbury's first acts was to forge a clause in his own commission. Desiring to foster the Established Church, and finding nothing to that effect in his instructions, he made instructions for himself. At first the people received him with great favor. The assembly voted two thousand pounds sterling to compensate him for the expenses of his voyage. In order to improve and fortify the Narrows, an additional sum of fifteen hundred pounds was granted. The money was taken out of the treasury, but no improvement was visible at the Narrows. The representatives modestly inquired what had become of their revenues. Lord Cornbury replied that the assembly of New York had no right to ask questions until the queen should give them permission. The old and oft-repeated conflict between personal despotism and popular liberty broke out anew. The people of the province were still divided on the subject of Leisler's insurrection. Cornbury became a violent partisan, favoring the enemies and persecuting the friends of that unfortunate leader; and so from year to year matters grew constantly worse, until between the governor and his people there existed no relation but that of mutual hatred.

In 1708 the civil dissensions of the province reached a climax. Each succeeding assembly resisted more stubbornly the measures of the governor. Time and again the people petitioned for his removal. The councilors selected their own treasurer, refused to vote appropriations, and curtailed Cornbury's revenues until he was impoverished and ruined. Then came Lord Lovelace with a commission from Queen Anne, and the passionate, wretched governor was unceremoniously turned out of office. Left to the mercy of his injured subjects, they arrested him for debt and threw him into prison, where he lay until, by his father's death, he became a peer of England and could be no longer held in confinement.

During the progress of Queen Anne's War the troops of New York coöperated with the army and navy of New England. Eighteen hundred volunteers from the Hudson and the Delaware composed the land forces in the unsuccessful expedition against Montreal in the winter of 1709-10. The provincial army proceeded as far as South River, east of Lake George. Here information was received that the English fleet which was expected to coöperate in the reduction of Quebec had been sent to Portugal; the armament of New England was insufficient of

itself to attempt the conquest of the Canadian stronghold ; and the troops of New York and New Jersey were obliged to retreat. Again, in 1711, when the incompetent Sir Hovenden Walker was pretending to conduct his fleet up the St. Lawrence, and was in reality only anxious to get away, the army which was to invade Canada by land was furnished by New York. A second time the provincial forces reached Lake George ; but the dispiriting news of the disaster to Walker's fleet destroyed all hope of success, and the discouraged soldiers returned to their homes.

Failure and disgrace were not the only distressing circumstances of these campaigns ; a heavy debt remained to overshadow the prosperity of New York and to consume her revenues. For many years the resources of the province were exhausted in meeting the extraordinary expenses of Queen Anne's war. In 1713 the treaty of Utrecht put an end to the conflict, and peace returned to the American colonies. In this year the Tuscaroras of Carolina—a nation of the same race with the Iroquois and Hurons of the North—were defeated and driven from their homes by the Southern colonists. The haughty tribe marched northward, crossed the middle colonies and joined their warlike kinsmen on the St. Lawrence, making the sixth nation in the Iroquois confederacy. Nine years later a great council was held at Albany. There the grand sachems of the Six Nations were met by the governors of New York, Pennsylvania and Virginia. An important commercial treaty was formed, by which the extensive and profitable fur-trade of the Indians, which, until now, had been engrossed by the French, was diverted to the English. In order to secure the full benefits of this arrangement, Governor Burnett of New York hastened to establish a trading-post at Oswego, on the southern shore of Lake Ontario. Five years later a substantial fort was built at the same place and furnished with an English garrison. As late as the middle of the century, Oswego continued to be the only fortified outpost of the English in the entire country drained by the St. Lawrence and its tributaries. The French, meanwhile, had built a strong fort at Niagara, and another at Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain. The struggle for colonial supremacy between the two nations was already beginning.

The administration of Governor Cosby, who succeeded Burnett in 1732, was a stormy epoch in the history of the colony. The people were in a constant struggle with the royal governors. At this time the contest took the form of a dispute about the freedom of the press. The liberal or democratic party of the province held that a public journal might criticise the acts of the administration and publish views distasteful to the government. The aristocratic party opposed such liberty as a dangerous

license, which, if permitted, would soon sap the foundations of all authority. Zenger, an editor of one of the liberal newspapers, published hostile criticisms on the policy of the governor, was seized and put in prison. Great excitement ensued. The people were clamorous for their champion. Andrew Hamilton, a noted lawyer of Philadelphia, went to New York to defend Zenger, who was brought to trial in July of 1735. The charge was libel against the government; the cause was ably argued, and the jury made haste to bring in a verdict of acquittal. The aldermen of the city of New York, in order to testify their appreciation of Hamilton's services in the cause of liberty, made him a present of an elegant gold box, and the people were wild with enthusiasm over their victory.

New York, like Massachusetts, was once visited with a fatal delusion. In the year 1741 occurred what is known as THE NEGRO PLOT. Slavery was permitted in the province, and negroes constituted a large fraction of the population. Several destructive fires had occurred, and it was believed that they had been kindled by incendiaries. The slaves were naturally distrusted; now they became feared and hated. Some degraded women came forward and gave information that the negroes had made a plot to burn the city, kill all who opposed them, and set up one of their own number as governor. The whole story was the essence of absurdity; but the people were alarmed, and were ready to believe anything. The reward of freedom was offered to any slave who would reveal the plot. Many witnesses rushed forward with foolish and contradictory stories; the jails were filled with the accused; and more than thirty of the miserable creatures, with hardly the form of a trial, were convicted and then hanged or burned to death. Others were transported and sold as slaves in foreign lands. As soon as the supposed peril had passed and the excited people regained their senses, it came to be doubted whether the whole shocking affair had not been the result of terror and fanaticism. The verdict of after times has been *that there was no plot at all*.

During the progress of King George's War the territory of New York was several times invaded by the French and Indians. But the invasions were feeble and easily repelled. Except the abandonment of a few villages in the northern part of the State and the destruction of a small amount of exposed property, little harm was done to the province. The alliance of the fierce Mohawks with the English always made the invasion of New York by the French an exploit of more danger than profit. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, concluded in 1748, again brought peace and prosperity to the people.

Notwithstanding the central position of New York, her growth

was slow, her development unsteady, and her prospects darkened with much adversity. In population she stood, at the outbreak of the French and Indian war, but *sixth* in a list of the colonies. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia had all outstripped her in the race. But the elements of future renown were nowhere else more abundantly bestowed. Here at the foot of her principal city lay the most convenient and commodious harbor on the Atlantic. A magnificent river—draining the country as far as where, at Onondaga, burned the great council-fire of the Six Nations—rolled down through fruitful valleys to join the waters of the bay. Best of all, the people who inhabited the noble province were ever ready to resist oppression, bold to defend their rights, and zealous in the cause of freedom.

Such is the history of the little colony planted on Manhattan Island. A hundred and thirty years have passed since the first feeble settlements were made; now the great valley of the Hudson is filled with beautiful farms and teeming villages. The Walloons of Flanders and the Puritans of New England have blended into a common people. Discord and contention, though bitter while they lasted, have borne only the peaceful fruit of colonial liberty. There are other and greater struggles through which New York must pass, other burdens to be borne, other calamities to be endured, other fires in which her sons must be tried and purified, before they gain their freedom. But the oldest and greatest of the middle colonies has entered upon a glorious career, and the ample foundations of an EMPIRE STATE are securely laid.



COLONIAL HISTORY.—CONTINUED.

MINOR EASTERN COLONIES.

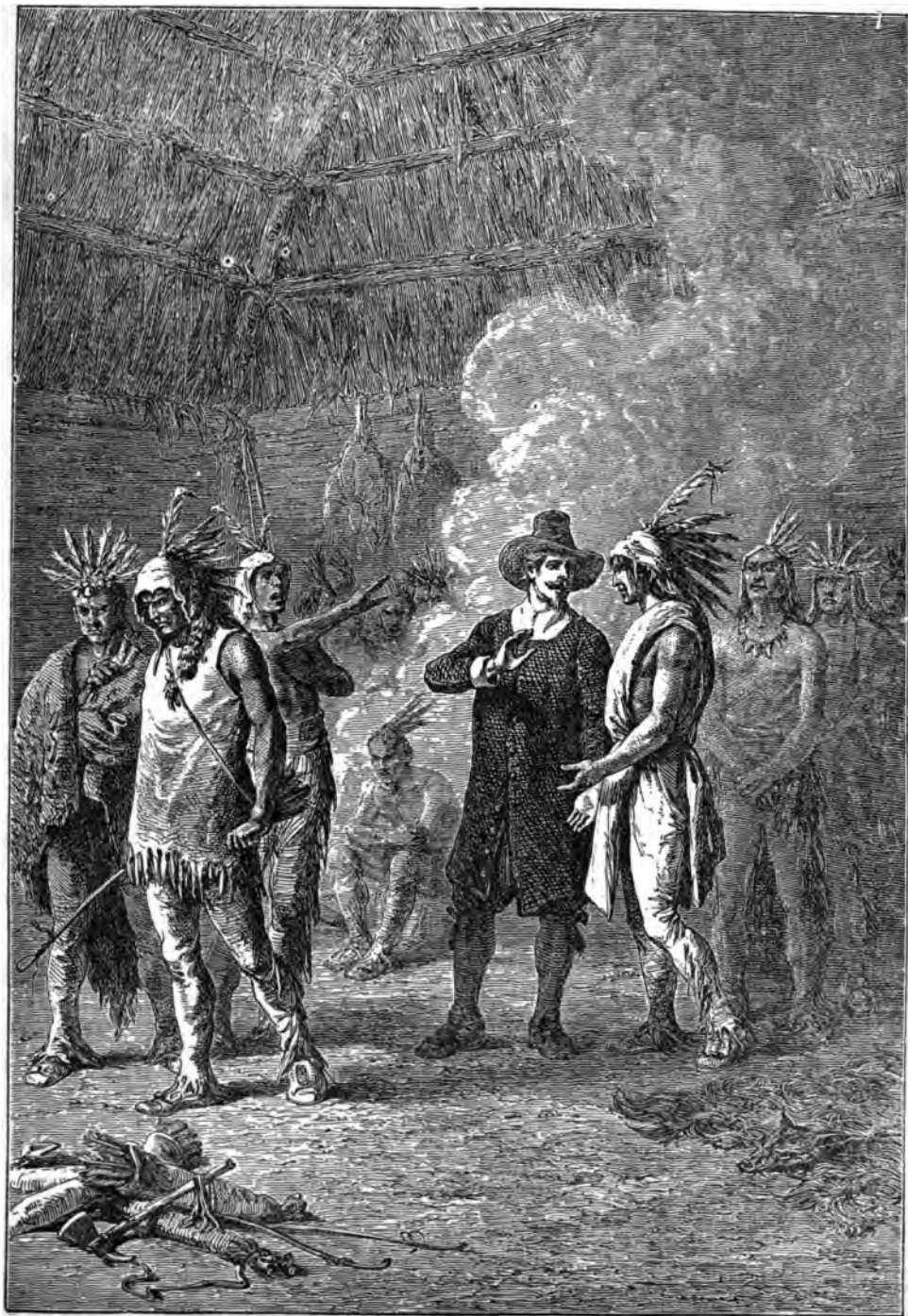
CHAPTER XXI.

CONNECTICUT.

THE history of Connecticut begins with the year 1630. The first grant of the territory was made by the council of Plymouth to the earl of Warwick; and in March of 1631 the claim was transferred by him to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, John Hampden and others. Before a colony could be planted by the proprietors, the Dutch of New Netherland reached the Connecticut River and built at Hartford their fort, called the House of Good Hope. The people of New Plymouth immediately organized and sent out a force to counteract this movement of their rivals. The territorial claim of the Puritans extended not only over Connecticut, but over New Netherland itself and onward to the west. Should the intruding Dutch colonists of Manhattan be allowed to move eastward and take possession of the finest valley in New England? Certainly not.

The English expedition reached the mouth of the Connecticut and sailed up the river. When the little squadron came opposite the House of Good Hope, the commander of the garrison ordered Captain Holmes, the English officer, to strike his colors; but the order was treated with derision. The Dutch threatened to fire in case the fleet should attempt to pass; but the English defiantly hoisted sails and proceeded up the river. The puny cannons of the House of Good Hope remained cold and silent. At a point just below the mouth of the Farmington, seven miles above Hartford, the Puritans landed and built the block-house of Windsor.

In October of 1635 a colony of sixty persons left Boston, traversed the forests of Central Massachusetts, and settled at Hartford, Windsor and Wethersfield. Earlier in the same year the younger Winthrop, a man who in all the virtues of a noble life was a worthy rival of his



ROGER WILLIAMS OPPOSING THE PEQUOT EMISSARIES.

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

father, the governor of Massachusetts, arrived in New England. He bore a commission from the proprietors of the Western colony to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River, and to prevent the further encroachments of the Dutch. The fortress was hastily completed and the guns mounted just in time to prevent the entrance of a Dutch trading-vessel which appeared at the mouth of the river. Such was the founding of Saybrook, so named in honor of the proprietors, Lords Say-and-Seal and Brooke. Thus was the most important river of New England brought under the dominion of the Puritans; the solitary Dutch settlement at Hartford was cut off from succor and left to dwindle into insignificance.

To the early annals of Connecticut belongs the sad story of THE PEQUOD WAR. The country west of the Thames was more thickly peopled with savages than any other portion of New England. The haughty and warlike Pequods were alone able to muster seven hundred warriors. The whole effective force of the English colonists did not amount to two hundred men. But the superior numbers of the cunning and revengeful savages were more than balanced by the unflinching courage and destructive weapons of the English.

The first act of violence was committed in the year 1633. The crew of a small trading-vessel were ambushed and murdered on the banks of the Connecticut. An Indian embassy went to Boston to apologize for the crime; the nation was forgiven and received in friendship. A treaty was patched up, the Pequods acknowledging the supremacy of the English and promising to become civilized. The Narragansetts, the hereditary enemies of the Pequods, had already yielded to the authority of Massachusetts and promised obedience to her laws. A reconciliation was thus effected between the two hostile races of savages. But as soon as the Pequods were freed from their old fear of the Narragansetts, they began to violate their recent treaty with the English. Oldham, the worthy captain of a trading-vessel, was murdered near Block Island. A company of militia pursued the perpetrators of the outrage and gave them a bloody punishment. All the slumbering hatred and suppressed rage of the nation burst forth, and the war began in earnest.

In this juncture of affairs the Pequods attempted a piece of dangerous diplomacy. A persistent effort was made to induce the Narragansetts and the Mohegans to join in a war of extermination against the English; and the plot was wellnigh successful. But the heroic Roger Williams, faithful in his misfortunes, sent a letter to Sir Henry Vane, governor of Massachusetts, warned him of the impending danger, and volunteered his services to defeat the conspiracy. The governor replied, urging Williams

to use his utmost endeavors to thwart the threatened alliance. Embarking alone in a frail canoe, the exile left Providence, which he had founded only a month before, and drifted out into Narragansett Bay. Every moment it seemed that the poor little boat with its lonely passenger would be swallowed up; but his courage and skill as an oarsman at last brought him to the shore in safety. Proceeding at once to the house of Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts, he found the painted and bloody ambassadors of the Pequods already there. For three days and nights, at the deadly peril of his life, he pleaded with Canonicus and Miantonomoh to reject the proposals of the hostile tribe, and to stand fast in their allegiance to the English. His noble efforts were successful; the wavering Narragansetts voted to remain at peace, and the disappointed Pequot chiefs were sent away.

The Mohegans also rejected the proposed alliance. Uncas, the sachem of that nation, not only remained faithful to the whites, but furnished a party of warriors to aid them against the Pequods. In the meantime, repeated acts of violence had roused the colony to vengeance. During the winter of 1636-37 many murders were committed in the neighborhood of Saybrook. In the following April a massacre occurred at Wethersfield, in which nine persons were butchered. On the 1st day of May the three towns of Connecticut declared war. Sixty gallant volunteers—one-third of the whole effective force of the colony—were put under command of Captain John Mason of Hartford. Seventy Mohegans joined the expedition; and the thoughtful Sir Henry Vane sent Captain Underhill with twenty soldiers from Boston.

The descent from Hartford to Saybrook occupied one day. On the 20th of the month the expedition, sailing eastward, passed the mouth of the Thames; here was the principal seat of the Pequot nation. When the savages saw the squadron go by without attempting to land, they set up shouts of exultation, and persuaded themselves that the English were afraid to hazard battle. But the poor natives had sadly mistaken the men with whom they had to deal. The fleet proceeded quietly into Narragansett Bay and anchored in the harbor of Wickford. Here the troops landed and began their march into the country of the Pequods. After one day's advance, Mason reached the cabin of Canonicus and Miantonomoh, sachems of the Narragansetts. There he attempted to persuade to join him against the common enemy; but the wary chieftains, knowing the prowess of the Pequods, and fearing that the English might be defeated, decided to remain neutral.

On the evening of the 25th of May the troops of Connecticut came within hearing of the Pequot fort. The unsuspecting warriors spent

their last night on earth in uproar and jubilee. At two o'clock in the morning the English soldiers rose suddenly from their places of concealment and rushed forward to the fort. A dog ran howling among the wigwams, and the warriors sprang to arms, only to receive a deadly volley from the English muskets. The fearless assailants leaped over the puny palisades and began the work of death; but the savages rose on every side in such numbers that Mason's men were about to be overwhelmed. "Burn them! burn them!" shouted the dauntless captain, seizing a flaming mat and running to the windward of the cabins. "Burn them!" resounded on every side; and in a few minutes the dry wigwams were one sheet of crackling flame. The English and Mohegans hastily withdrew to the ramparts. The yelling savages found themselves begirt with fire. They ran round and round like wild beasts in a burning circus. If one of the wretched creatures burst through the flames, it was only to meet certain death from a broadsword or a musket-ball. The destruction was complete and awful. Only seven warriors escaped; seven others were made prisoners. Six hundred men, women and children perished, nearly all of them being roasted to death in a hideous heap. Before the rising of the sun the pride and glory of the Pequods had passed away for ever. Sassacus, the grand sachem of the tribe, escaped into the forest, fled for protection to the Mohawks, and was murdered. Two of the English soldiers were killed and twenty others wounded in the battle.



SCENE OF THE PEQUOT WAR.

In the early morning three hundred Pequods, the remnant of the nation, approached from a second fort in the neighborhood. They had heard the tumult of battle, and supposed their friends victorious. To their utter horror, they found their fortified town in ashes and nearly all their proud tribe lying in one blackened pile of half-burnt flesh and bones. The savage warriors stamped the earth, yelled and tore their hair in desperate rage, and ran howling through the woods. Mason's men returned by way of New London to Saybrook, and thence to Hartford. New troops arrived from Massachusetts. The remnants of the hostile nation were pursued into the swamps and thickets west of Saybrook. Every wigwam of the Pequods was burned, and every field laid waste. The remaining two hundred panting fugitives were hunted to death or captivity. The prisoners were distributed as servants among the Narra-

gansetts and Mohegans; a few were sold as slaves. The first war between the English colonists and the natives had ended in the overthrow and destruction of one of the most powerful tribes of New England. For many years the other nations, when tempted to hostility, remembered the fate of the Pequods.

The final capture of the Pequod fugitives was made at Fairfield, on Long Island Sound, fifty miles south-west from Saybrook. The English thus became better acquainted with the coast west of the mouth of the Connecticut. Some men of Boston were delighted with the beautiful plain between the Wallingford and West Rivers. Here they tarried over winter, building some cabins and exploring the country; such was the founding of NEW HAVEN. Shortly afterward, a Puritan colony from England, under the leadership of Theophilus Eaton and John Davenport, arrived at Boston. Hearing of the beauty of the country on the sound, the new immigrants again set sail, and about the middle of April reached New Haven. On the morning of the first Sabbath after their arrival the colonists assembled for worship under a spreading oak; and Davenport, their minister, preached a touching and appropriate sermon on THE TEMPTATION IN THE WILDERNESS. The next care was to make an honorable purchase of land from the Indians—a policy which was ever afterward faithfully adhered to by the colony. For the first year there was no government except a simple covenant, into which the settlers entered, that all would be obedient to the rules of Scripture.

In June of 1639 the leading men of New Haven held a convention *in a barn*, and formally adopted the Bible as the constitution of the State. Everything was strictly conformed to the religious standard. The government was called the House of Wisdom, of which Eaton, Davenport and five others were the seven Pillars. None but church members were admitted to the rights of citizenship. All offices were to be filled by the votes of the freemen at an annual election. For twenty years consecutively, Mr. Eaton—first and greatest of the pillars—was chosen governor of the colony. Other settlers came, and pleasant villages sprang up on both shores of Long Island Sound.

Civil government began in Connecticut in the year 1639. Until that time the Western colonies had been subject to Massachusetts, and had scarcely thought of independence. But when the soldiers of Hartford returned victorious from the Pequod war, the exulting people began to think of a separate commonwealth. If they could fight their own battles, could they not make their own laws? Delegates from the three towns came together at Hartford, and on the 14th of January a constitution was framed for the colony. The new instrument was one of the most simple

and liberal ever adopted. An oath of allegiance to the State was the only qualification of citizenship. No recognition of the English king or of any foreign authority was required. Different religious opinions were alike tolerated and respected. All the officers of the colony were to be chosen by ballot at an annual election. The law-making power was vested in a general assembly, and the representatives were apportioned among the towns according to population. Neither Saybrook nor New Haven adopted this constitution, by which the other colonies in the valley of the Connecticut were united in a common government.

In 1643, Connecticut became a member of the Union of New England. Into this confederacy New Haven was also admitted; and in the next year Saybrook was purchased of George Fenwick, one of the proprietors, and permanently annexed to Connecticut. The anticipated difficulties with the Dutch of New Netherland had made the colonies of the West anxious for a closer union with Massachusetts. The fears of the people were not entirely quieted until 1650, when Governor Stuyvesant met the commissioners of Connecticut at Hartford, and established the western boundary of the province. This measure promised peace; but in 1651 war broke out between England and Holland, and notwithstanding the recent pledges of friendship, New England and New Netherland were wellnigh drawn into the conflict. Stuyvesant was suspected of inciting the Indians against the English; a declaration of war was proposed before the delegates of the united colonies, and was only prevented from passing by the veto of Massachusetts. Left without support, Connecticut and New Haven next sought aid from Cromwell, who entered heartily into the project and sent out a fleet to co-operate with the colonists in the reduction of New Netherland. But while the western towns were busily preparing for war, the news of peace arrived, and hostilities were happily averted.

On the restoration of monarchy in England, Connecticut made haste to recognize King Charles as rightful sovereign. It was as much an act of sound policy as of loyal zeal. The people of the Connecticut valley were eager for a royal charter. They had conquered the Pequods; they had bought the lands of the Mohegans; they had purchased the claims of the earl of Warwick; it only remained to secure all these acquisitions with a patent from the king. The infant republic selected its best and truest man, the scholarly younger Winthrop, and sent him as ambassador to London. He bore with him a charter which had been carefully prepared by the authorities of Hartford; the problem was to induce the king to sign it.

The aged Lord Say-and-Seal, for many years the friend and bene-

factor of the colony, was now an important officer of the Crown. To him Winthrop delivered a letter, unfolded his plans and appealed for help; and the appeal was not in vain. The earl of Manchester, lord chamberlain to the king, was induced to lend his aid. Winthrop easily obtained an audience with the sovereign, and did not fail to show him a ring which Charles I. had given as a pledge of friendship to Winthrop's grandfather. The little token so moved the wayward monarch's feelings



THE YOUNGER WINTHROP.

that in a moment of careless magnanimity he signed the colonial charter without the alteration of a letter. Winthrop returned to the rejoicing colony, bearing a patent the most liberal and ample ever granted by an English monarch. The power of governing themselves was conferred on the people without qualification or restriction. Every right of sovereignty and of independence, except the name, was con-

ceded to the new State. The territory included under the charter extended from the bay and river of the Narragansetts westward to the Pacific. The people who had built the House of Wisdom at New Haven now found themselves the unwilling subjects of the new commonwealth of Connecticut.

For fourteen years the excellent Winthrop was annually chosen governor of the colony. Every year added largely to the population and wealth of the province. The civil and religious institutions were the freest and best in New England. Peace reigned; the husbandman was undisturbed in the field, the workman in his shop. Even during King Philip's War, Connecticut was saved from invasion. Not a war-whoop

was heard, not a hamlet burned, not a life lost, within her borders. Her soldiers made common cause with their brethren of Massachusetts and Rhode Island; but their own homes were saved from the desolations of war.

In July of 1675, Sir Edmund Andros, the governor of New York, arrived with an armed sloop at the mouth of the Connecticut. Orders were sent to Captain Bull, who commanded the fort at Saybrook, to surrender his post; but the brave captain replied by hoisting the flag of England and assuring the bearer of the message that his master would better retire. Andros, however, landed and came to a parley with the officers of the fort. He began to read his commission, but was ordered to stop. In vain did the arrogant magistrate insist that the dominions of the duke of York extended from the Connecticut to the Delaware. "Connecticut has her own charter, signed by His Gracious Majesty King Charles II.," said Captain Bull. "Leave off your reading, or take the consequences!" The argument prevailed, and the red-coated governor, trembling with rage, was escorted to his boat by a company of Saybrook militia.

In 1686, when Andros was made royal governor of New England, Connecticut was again included in his jurisdiction. The first year of his administration was spent in establishing his authority in Massachusetts, Rhode Island and New Hampshire. In the following October he made his famous visit to Hartford. On the day of his arrival he invaded the provincial assembly while in session, seized the book of minutes, and with his own hand wrote *FINIS* at the bottom of the page. He demanded the immediate surrender of the colonial charter. Governor Treat pleaded long and earnestly for the preservation of the precious document. Andros was inexorable. The shades of evening fell. Joseph Wadsworth found in the gathering darkness an opportunity to conceal the cherished parchment—a deed which has made his own name and the name of a tree immortal. Two years later, when the government of Andros was overthrown, Connecticut made haste to restore her liberties.

In the autumn of 1693, another attempt was made to subvert the freedom of the colony. Fletcher, the governor of New York, went to Hartford to assume command of the militia of the province. He bore a commission from King William; but by the terms of the charter the right of commanding the troops was vested in the colony itself. The general assembly refused to recognize the authority of Fletcher, who, nevertheless, ordered the soldiers under arms and proceeded to read his commission as colonel. "Beat the drums!" shouted Captain Wadsworth, who stood at the head of the company. "Silence!" said Fletcher; the

drums ceased, and the reading began again. "Drum! drum!" cried Wadsworth; and a second time the voice of the reader was drowned in the uproar. "Silence! silence!" shouted the enraged governor. The dauntless Wadsworth stepped before the ranks and said, "Colonel Fletcher, if I am interrupted again, I will let the sunshine through your body in an instant." That ended the controversy. Benjamin Fletcher thought it better to be a living governor of New York than a dead colonel of the Connecticut militia.

"I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." Such were the words of ten ministers who, in the year 1700, assembled at the village of Branford, a few miles east of New Haven. Each of the worthy fathers, as he uttered the words, deposited a few volumes on the table around which they were sitting; such was the founding of YALE COLLEGE. In 1702 the school was formally opened at Saybrook, where it continued for fifteen years, and was then removed to New Haven. One of the most liberal patrons of the college was Elihu Yale, from whom the famous institution of learning derived its name. Common schools had existed in almost every village of Connecticut since the planting of the colony. The children of the Pilgrims have never forgotten the cause of education.

The half century preceding the French and Indian war was a period of prosperity to all the western districts of New England. Connecticut was especially favored. Almost unbroken peace reigned throughout her borders. The blessings of a free commonwealth were realized in full measure. The farmer reaped his fields in cheerfulness and hope. The mechanic made glad his dusty shop with anecdote and song. The merchant feared no duty, the villager no taxes. Want was unknown and pauperism unheard of. Wealth was little cared for and crime of rare occurrence among a people with whom intelligence and virtue were the only foundations of nobility. With fewer dark pages in her history, less austerity of manners and greater liberality of sentiment, Connecticut had all the lofty purposes and shining virtues of Massachusetts. The visions of Hooker and Haynes, and the dreams of the quiet Winthrop, were more than realized in the happy homes of the Connecticut valley.

11

12

